

Julius Groos, Publisher, Heidelberg.

Gaspey-Otto-Sauer's method

for the learning of Modern languages.

„Mit jeder neuerlernten Sprache gewinnt
man eine neue Seele.“ Karl V.

The textbooks of the **Gaspey-Otto-Sauer** method have, within the last ten years, acquired a **universal reputation**, increasing in proportion as a knowledge of living languages has become a necessity of modern life. The chief points of advantage, by which they compare favorably with thousands of similar books, are lowness of price and good appearance, the happy union of theory and practice, the clear scientific basis of the grammar proper combined with **practical conversational exercises**, and the system, here conceived for the first time and consistently carried out, by which the pupil is really taught **to speak and write the foreign language**.

To this method is entirely due the enormous success with which the **Gaspey-Otto-Sauer** textbooks have met; most other grammars either content themselves with giving the theoretical exposition of the grammatical forms and trouble the pupil with a confused mass of the most far-fetched **irregularities and exceptions without ever applying them**, or go to the other extreme, and **simply teach him to repeat in a parrot-like manner a few colloquial phrases** without letting him grasp the real genius of the foreign language.

The superiority of the **Gaspey-Otto-Sauer** textbooks is most clearly proved by the unanimous opinion of the press in all quarters of the Globe, by the numerous editions they have hitherto passed through, by the success attending the books based on this method in other foreign languages and lastly even by the frequent attempts at imitation, plagiarism and fraudulent impressions.

The new editions are constantly improved and kept up to date.

Method Gaspey-Otto-Sauer

for the Study of modern Languages.

For the use of Englishmen and Americans.

German:

Otto, Dr. E., German Convers.-Grammar. 22. Ed. cloth.	5	6
— Key to the German Convers.-Grammar. 16. Ed. boards.	2	—
— Supplem. Exercises to Otto's Germ. Gram. 2. Ed. boards.	2	—
— Elementary German Grammar. 4. Ed. cloth.	2	6
— First German Book. 7. Ed. cloth.	2	—
— German Reader. Part I. 5. Ed. boards.	3	—
— German Reader. Part II. 3. Ed. boards.	3	—
— German Reader. Part III. 2. Ed. boards.	3	—
— Materials for transl. English into German. Part I. 5. Ed. boards.	3	—
— — Part II. 2. Ed. boards.	3	—
— Key to Materials for transl. English into German. 2. Ed. boards.	2	—
— German-English Conversations. 2. Ed. cloth.	2	6
Otto-Wright, Accidence of the German language. cloth.	2	6

French:

Otto, Dr. E., French Convers.-Grammar. 9. Ed. cloth.	5	6
— Key to the French Convers.-Grammar. 5. Ed. boards.	2	—
— Materials for transl. English into French. 4. Ed. cloth.	3	—
Wright, Dr. J., Elementary French Grammar. cloth.	2	6

Italian:

Sauer, C. M., Italian Convers.-Grammar. 5. Ed. cloth.	5	6
— Key to the Italian Convers.-Grammar. 4. Ed. boards.	2	—

Spanish:

Sauer, C. M., Spanish Convers.-Grammar. 4. Ed. cloth.	5	6
— Key to the Spanish Convers.-Grammar. 2. Ed. boards.	2	—
Sauer-Roehrich, Spanish Reader. cloth.	5	—

For the use of Frenchmen.

German:

Otto, Dr. E., Grammaire allemande. 13. éd. cloth.	5	—
— Corrigé des Thèmes de la Grammaire allem. 3. éd. boards.	2	—
— Petite Grammaire allemande. 6. éd. cloth.	2	6
— Lectures allemandes. I. partie. 4. éd. cloth.	3	—
— Lectures allemandes. II. partie. 2. éd. cloth.	3	—
— Lectures allemandes. III. partie. 2. éd. cloth.	3	—
— Conversations allemandes. 3. éd. cloth.	2	6

English:

Mauron-Gaspey, Grammaire anglaise. 5. éd. cloth.	5	—
— Corrigé des Thèmes de la Grammaire angl. 2. éd. boards.	2	—
Mauron, Dr. A., Petite Grammaire anglaise. 2. éd. cloth.	2	6
— Lectures anglaises. 2. éd. cloth.	3	6

Italian:

Sauer, C. M., Grammaire italienne. 6. éd. cloth.	5	—
— Corrigé des Thèmes de la Gramm. italienne. 3. éd. boards.	2	—

Extract

from the Literary Review (Litterarische Rundschau)
of J. B. Stamminger, Würzburg.

EDUCATIONAL WORKS AND CLASS-BOOKS

for the Study of modern Languages,
published by **Julius Groos, Heidelberg.**

Julius Groos, Publisher at Heidelberg, has for the last thirty years been devoting his special attention to educational works on modern languages, and has published a large number of class-books for the study of those modern languages most generally spoken. In this particular department he is in our opinion unsurpassed by any other German publisher. The series consists of 83 volumes of different sizes which are all arranged on the same system, as is easily seen by a glance at the grammars which so closely resemble one another, that an acquaintance with one greatly facilitates the study of the others. — This is no small advantage in these exacting times, when the knowledge of one language alone is hardly deemed sufficient.

*The system referred to is easily discoverable: 1st. In the arrangement of the grammar — 2nd. In the endeavour to enable the pupil to understand a regular text as soon as possible, and above all to teach him to **speak** the foreign language; this latter point was considered by the authors so particularly characteristic of their works, that they have styled them — to distinguish them from other works of a similar kind — **Conversational Grammars.***

*The grammars are all divided into **two** parts, commencing with a systematic explanation of the rules for pronunciation, and are again subdivided into a number of **Lessons.** Each Part treats of the Parts of Speech in succession, the 1st. giving a rapid sketch of the fundamental rules, which are explained more fully in the 2nd. In the 1st. Part attention is given rather to the **Etymology**; in the 2nd. Part more to the **Syntax** of the language; without however entirely separating the two, as is generally the case in Systematic Grammars. The rules appear to us to be clearly given, they are explained by examples, and the exercises are quite sufficient. — We must confess that for those persons who, from a **practical** point of view, wish to learn a foreign language sufficiently well to enable them to **write** and **speak** it with ease, the authors have set down the grammatical rules in such a way, that it is equally easy to understand and to learn them. —*

*Moreover we cannot but commend the elegance and neatness of the **type** and **binding** of the books. It is doubtless on this account that these volumes have been received with so much favour and that several have reached such an large circulation.*

*Our admiration of this rich collection of works, of the method displayed and the fertile genius of certain of the authors, is increased when we examine the different **series**, especially those intended for the use of foreigners.*

The first series comprises manuals for the use of Englishmen. It consists of 22 volumes. 17 of which are adapted for the study of German and French:

Dr. E. Otto, German Convers.-Grammar and Key to it;

Dr. E. Otto, Supplement. exercises to the Germ. Grammar;

Dr. E. Otto, Elementary German Grammar;

Dr. E. Otto, First German Book;

Dr. E. Otto, German Reader, 3 vols.;

Dr. E. Otto, Materials for translating English into German, 2 vols. and Keys;

Dr. E. Otto, German Conversations;

Dr. E. Otto, French Convers.-Grammar and Key to it;

Dr. E. Otto, Materials for transl. English into French;

Otto-Wright, Elementary French Grammar;

Otto-Wright, Accidence of the german language;

C. M. Sauer, Italian Conversation-Grammar and Key;

C. M. Sauer, Spanish Grammar and Key;

Sauer-Roehrich, Spanish Reader.

The series for the use of Frenchmen comprises 17 vol., 7 of which adapted for the study of German:

Dr. E. Otto, Grammaire allemande and Key to it;

Dr. E. Otto, Petite Grammaire allemande;

Dr. E. Otto, Lectures allemandes, 3 vols.;

Dr. E. Otto. Conversations allemandes;

4 adapted for the study of English:

Mauron-Gaspey, Nouvelle Grammaire anglaise and Key;

Dr. A. Mauron, Petite Grammaire anglaise;

Dr. A. Mauron, Lectures anglaises;

two each adapted for the study of Italian, three for Spanish and two for Russian:

C. M. Sauer, Nouvelle Grammaire italienne and Key;

C. M. Sauer, Grammaire espagnole and Key;

Sauer-Roehrich, Lectures espagnoles;

Paul Fuchs, Grammaire russe and Key.

The series for Italians comprises 7 vols. (2 for the English, 2 for the French and 3 for the German language):

C. M. Sauer, Grammatica inglese;

L. Pavia, Grammatica elementare della lingua inglese;

Sauer-Motti, Grammatica francese;

Sauer-Motti, Grammatica francese;

Sauer-Ferrari, Grammatica tedesca;

Dr. E. Otto, Piccola grammatica tedesca;

Dr. E. Otto, Letture tedesche.

There are three volumes for the use of Spaniards:

Dr. E. Otto, Gramática sucinta de la lengua alemana.

Dr. E. Otto, Gramática sucinta de la lengua francesa.

Dr. E. Otto, Gramática sucinta de la lengua inglesa.

There are three volumes for the use of Portuguese:

Otto-Prévôt, Grammatica allemã.

Otto-Prévôt, Chave da Grammatica allemã.

Otto-Prévôt, Grammatica elementar allemã.

The series for the use of Germans comprises the French subdivision with the following books:

Dr. E. Otto, Franz. Konversat.-Grammatik;

Dr. E. Otto, Franz. Konversat.-Lesebuch, in 2 parts;

Dr. E. Otto, Franz. Konversat.-Lesebuch (for the spec. use of Schools for young ladies, in 2 parts);

Dr. E. Otto, Kleine französische Sprachlehre;

Dr. E. Otto, Conversations françaises;

the English subdivision comprises:

Dr. Th. Gaspey, Englische Konversations-Grammatik;

Dr. Th. Gaspey, Englisch Konversations-Lesebuch;

Dr. Th. Gaspey, English Conversations, containing subjects taken from daily life, & extracts from history and literature;

Dr. E. Otto, Kleine englische Sprachlehre;

Dr. E. Otto, Materialien z. Übersetzen ins Englische for proficient (short pieces of consecutive prose, with conversational exercises).

the Italian subdivision comprises:

C. M. Sauer, Italienische Konversations-Grammatik;

C. M. Sauer, Italienisches Konvers.-Lesebuch, which chiefly aims at conversational language;

C. M. Sauer, Kleine italienische Sprachlehre;

C. M. Sauer, Dialoghi italiani, adapted not only for schools, but also for persons who intend to travel in Italy;

in the spanish subdivision we have:

C. M. Sauer, Spanische Konversations-Grammatik;

C. M. Sauer, Dialogos castellanos;

Sauer-Roechrich, Spanisches Lesebuch;

Sauer-Kordgien, Spanische Rections-Liste.

in the Portugeese subdivision:

Sauer-Kordgien, Portugies. Konvers.-Grammatik und Schlüssel.

G. C. Kordgien. *Kleine Portugiesische Sprachlehre*;
in the *Dutch* subdivision:
Dr. C. v. Reinhardtstöttner, *Holländ. Konvers.-Grammatik*;
in the *Russian* subdivision:
Paul Fuchs, *Russische Konversations-Grammatik* und
Schlüssel.

The works of Dr. L. Supfle, edited by the same publisher, do not follow the conversational method. The „*Französische Schulgrammatik*“, for lower and middle Classes, a work answering both for scientific and practical purposes, though perhaps somewhat too bulky for the above-mentioned classes, contains very good exercises, and may also be useful for reference. The „*Lesebuch*“ (or French Reader), and especially the „*Chrestomathie*“, for upper Classes, contain careful selections, of pieces of prose and poetry, from the different periods of French literature.

(These three works have been revised and enlarged by Professor Dr. Mauron, who joined to the last a „*Résumé (Compendium) de l'Histoire de la Littérature française*“, and a „*Petit Traité de la Versification française*“, that enhance its value.)

The „*Engl. Chrestomathie*“ of Dr. L. Supfle is a very good companion to the French one.

In these works the chief difficulty under which several of the authors have labored, has been the necessity of teaching a language in a foreign idiom; not to mention the peculiar difficulties which the German idiom offers in writing school-books for the study of that language.

We willingly testify that the whole collection gives proof of much care & industry, both with regard to the aims it has in view & the way in which these have been carried out, & moreover reflects great credit on the editor, this collection being in reality quite an exceptional thing of its kind. —

Paderborn 1881.

. . . . t.

The Publisher is unweariably engaged in extending the range of the educational works issuing from his press; a certain number of new books are now in course of preparation.

Ivelyn Stewart Murray
METHOD GASPEY-OTTO-SAUER.

1889

MATERIALS FOR TRANSLATING ENGLISH INTO GERMAN

WITH GRAMMATICAL NOTES AND
A VOCABULARY

BY

Dr. EMIL OTTO.

REVISED

BY

Dr. J. WRIGHT.

FIRST PART.

SIXTH EDITION.

LONDON.

DAVID NUTT, 270 Strand.

DULAU & Co., 37 Soho Square.

SAMPS. LOW & Co., St. Dunstan's House, Fetter Lane, Fleet Street.

AGENCIES FOR AMERICA:

NEW-YORK.

STEIGER E. & Co., 25 Park Place.

CHRISTERN, F. W., 29 West, 23d Street.

THE INTERNATIONAL
NEWS COMPANY.

29 and 31 Beekman Street.

CHICAGO.

MÜHLBAUER & BEHRLE,

41 La Salle Street.

BOSTON.

CHARLES SCHÖNHOF,

144 Tremont Street.

HEIDELBERG.

JULIUS GROOS.

1889.

The method of Gaspey-Otto-Sauer is my own private property, having been acquired by purchase from the authors. The text-books made after this method are incessantly improved. All rights, especially the right of making new editions, and the right of translation for all languages, are reserved. Imitations and fraudulent impressions will be prosecuted according to law. I am thankful for communications relating to these matters.

Heidelberg.

Julius Groos.

Preface.

Among those who study German, there may be a good many who are satisfied with attaining such a degree as to be able to understand a German book and talk a little German. For them the study of my "**German Grammar with conversational Exercises**"*), of my "**Elementary German Grammar**"**) and of my **German Readers*****) may suffice.

But those who are desirous of being able to *translate English into good German*, and to *write German letters*, should continue their practical studies. Now the question arises: "What next, when we have gone through the Grammar?" And here I confess I was often at a loss, when this question was put to me. "German Exercises" are indeed not wanting; but they have to go along with the Grammar. To take an English book and to translate some dozen pages, as many try to do, will not answer the purpose either, because there is nothing to explain to them grammatical difficulties, peculiar constructions, idiomatical expressions, particular meanings of words etc. Proficient students want to be guided in this by a little book composed *expressly for that purpose*. This idea led the author of this volume to collect a number of short Extracts from good English prose writers *for translating into German*, to arrange them gradually, and to accompany them with the necessary notes and frequent references to the Grammar.

A Vocabulary is added (p. 148) for the numbers 1—65 only, as the author wishes to leave open to the pupil an opportunity of learning the use of a Dictionary.

I am convinced that those who go carefully through a part of this volume will gain great facility not only in *writing*, but also in *speaking* German.

*) German Grammar with conversational Exercises by Dr. **Emil Otto**, late Lecturer of Modern Languages at the University of Heidelberg. Author of the "French Conversation-Grammar" and some other Class-books. 24th Edition. Price 5 sh.

) Elementary German Grammar combined with Exercises, Readings and Conversations by Dr. **Emil Otto. Revised by Dr. **J. Wright**. 5th Edition. Price 2 sh. 6 d.

***) The German Reader. A Selection of Readings in German Literature with explanatory Notes and a Vocabulary, in three parts by Dr. **Emil Otto**. I. part. 5. Ed., II. part. 3. Ed., III. part. 2. Ed. Price à part. 3 sh.

Preface to the fifth Edition.

Thanks to the care and accuracy of Professor Dr. Mauron, who was intrusted with this edition, several errors and misprints have been mended, some improvements and additions introduced in the notes and vocabulary, and the German text has also been corrected according to the new orthography.

Preface to the new Edition.

The corrections and additions, made by Prof. Mauron in the last edition, brought the work quite down to date, so that it has not been found necessary to introduce any changes into the new edition beyond the correction of a few slight misprints.

A **Key***) to it has been published. — It is not necessary to go through the whole of the *first part*, before taking up the *second volume***) which contains English dialogues for translating into German with notes and a vocabulary and which has been prepared for the purpose of practising the *conversational style*.

Oxford.

J. Wright.

*) **Key** to Dr. Emil Otto's Materials for translating English into German. Second Edition. Price 2 sh.

) **Materials for translating **English** into **German** with Indexes of words and Explanatory notes. Second part containing a Series of English Conversations on various Subjects, adapted for translating into German. By Dr. Emil Otto, late Lecturer of Modern Languages at the University of Heidelberg. Second Edition. Price 3 sh.

Contents.

Anecdotes, Traits, Stories etc.

	page
1. A fit Answer	1
2. A candid Confession	1
3. Ariosto	1
4. Curiosity ashamed	2
5. Alexander and Parmenio	2
6. The Traveller and the Boatman	2
7. Simplicity	3
8. Pope Leo X. and the Alchymist	3
9. Excessive Politeness	3
10. Troy	4
11. The Watchman robbed by soldiers	4
12. The Romans	4
13. The Ass and the Wolf	5
14. Stentor	5
15. The Spectacles found	5
16. Dr. Franklin	6
17. Dean Swift and his Servant	7
18. Columbus' Egg	7
19. The Dervise	8
20. The Painter wishing to please every one	9
21. Canute's Reproof	10
22. General Ziethen	11
23. Scarce Articles	11
24. Cross Questions	12
25. Female Heroism	13
26. The two Merchants	14
27. Peter the Hermit	15
28. Filial Affection of a Page	16
29. Delicacy of king Alphonso	17

	page
30. Walter Scott at School	18
31. Diamond cuts Diamond	19
32. Humanity of Louis XIV.	20
33. The cunning Cutler	20
34. Abstraction, or Absence of mind	21
35. The Value of time	21
36. The Bagpiper revived	22
37. Mercury and the Woodman	23
38. The Dog and the Eels	24
39. The Dervise and the Atheist	25
40. The Queen of Spain has no legs	26
41. The Wolf and the Lamb	27
42. Honourable Conduct of king John of France	28
43. The dog's Will	29
44. Ventriloquy	30
45. The Page and the Cherries	31
46. The Lounger	32
47. Cruelty of king John	33
48. Real or intrinsic Value	34
49. A very singular Excuse	35
50. How to catch a Pickpocket	36
51. A singular Precaution	37
52. Gratitude	38
53. Continuation	39
54. Noble Blood. A lesson for Pride	39
55. Continuation	40
56. The mysterious Englishmen	40
57. The same subject continued	41
58. The same subject continued	43
59. The lost camel	44
60. The Whistle (by Franklin)	45
61. The same continued	46
62. Benevolence	47
63. The same continued	47
64. Respect for the Bible	48
65. The same continued	49
66. The British Empire	50
67. The youthful Martyr	51
68. A Lesson	52
69. Rabelais, a Traitor	52
70. Misery of Inactivity	53
71. Hazael, king of Syria	54

	page
72. Desperate Patriotism	55
73. Curious Expedient	56
74. The Storks	57
75. The Giant and the Dwarf	58
76. Rotterdam in Winter	59
77. A West Indian Slave	60
78. The Bishop and his Birds	61
79. The same continued	62
80. A Mystery cleared up	64
81. Dionysius the Tyrant	65
82. Napoleon and the British Sailor	66
83. Avarice punished	67
84. Pœtus and Aria	68
85. The same continued	69
86. Origin of the Chimney-sweepers' Holiday	70
87. The same continued	71
88. Memory	72
89. Accident at Prince Schwartzberg's Hotel	73
90. Ingratitude and Avarice punished	74

Letters.

1. Returning some Books	76
2. From an Uncle to his Nephew	77
3. Answer	77
4—6. Letters on several Subjects	78
7. Information on going to London	80
8. Answer	80
9. Informing a Mother of her Son's illness	82
10. On a Journey to Marseilles	82
11. From Lord Byron to his Mother	83
12. Mr. Sterne to Mr. Panchard	84
13. Another letter	84
14. Mary Stuart to Queen Elizabeth	85
15—16. Two other Letters	86
17. Dr. Johnson to Mr. Elphinstone	88
18—19. Two other Letters	89
20. Lord Chesterfield to his Son	91

Historical Extracts.

1. Franklin	92
2. Patriotism of Regulus	93

	page
3. The same Subject continued	95
4. Copernicus	96
5. History of Catharine, 1st Empress of Russia	97
6. Combat between the Horatii and Curiatii	102
7. Captain Cook	104
8. Discovery of America	110
9. Columbus' first Return to Europe	117
10. Life and Writings of Oliver Goldsmith	118

Dramatic Extracts.

Charles XII., an historical Comedy by J. R. Planché	126
Vocabulary	148

Extracts from English Authors adapted for translation into German.*)

1.

A fit¹ Answer.

Frederick the Great sustained² a severe defeat at³ Kolin. Some time after⁴, at³ a review, ²he**) ³jokingly ¹asked a soldier, who had got⁵ a deep cut in his cheek: "Friend, at¹ what alehouse did⁷ you get that scratch?" "I got it," said the soldier, "at Kolin, where Your Majesty paid the reckoning."

1) treffend. 2) erleiden, *irr. v.* II. Conjug. (see Otto's German Conv.-Grammar 25th Edit., Less 27, Nr. 68). — 3) bei. 4) after is here an adverb and translated nachher. 5) to get, bekommen. — 6) in. 7) did you get, haben Sie ... bekommen? For this interrogative form see Otto's Germ.-Grammar L. 42, § 3.

2.

A candid Confession.

A gentleman, who was parting¹ some people in a fray, received ²so ³large ¹a cut in his head, that the surgeon told him he *could*² see his brains. That³ is impossible, says the gentleman, for if I had [any]⁴ brains, ²this³ ¹would never have⁵ happened⁵ [to] me⁶.

1) Translate *who* ... parted, trennte. 2) Subj. 3) dieß or daß. 4) Words enclosed in brackets are not to be translated. 5) begegnen, a neuter verb, construed with the auxiliary sein (see Gram. Less. 32, 3). 6) *me* is the simple dative mir without preposition.

3.

Ariosto.

Ariosto had built a small house for himself.¹ Being asked² by his friend, how it happened that he, who de-

*) A *Vocabulary* is to be found at the end of the book.

**) These figures *in* the line indicate the order of the words.

scribed fine palaces in his "Orllando", could content himself¹ with ²so ³small ¹an³ edifice? "Words are cheaper than stones", replied the philosophic bard.

1) refl. pron. sich. 2) Als, see Gram. L. 45, b and Anecdote. 1. 3) For the place of the article see Gram. L. 38, 13).

4.

²Curiosity ¹ashamed.

King William the Third, being¹ upon a march for some secret expedition, was² entreated by a general to tell him what³ his design *was*⁴. The king, instead of telling⁵ him, asked him if⁶ he *could*⁴ keep a secret. The general said he *could*⁴. "Well, answered his Majesty, I can keep a secret as well as you."

1) Translate; *when* (Als) *King W. . . was*. 2) *Add.* he, wurde er. 3) *was* (was). Gram. Less. 24, 2. 4) Subj. (see Gram. Less. 43, § 8). 5) Put the Infinitive with zu. 6) ob.

5.

Alexander and Parmenio.

Darius having offered Alexander ten thousand talents to¹ divide Asia equally with him, ²the latter ¹answered: "The earth cannot bear two suns, nor² Asia two kings." Parmenio, a friend of Alexander, hearing of the great offer which Darius had made, said: — "Were I Alexander, ²I ¹would accept it." — "So would I"³, replied Alexander, "were I Parmenio."

1) um . . . zu teilen or better damit er Asien . . . teilen sollte. 2) noch or ebensovienig. 3) Ich würde es auch thun.

6.

The Traveller and Boatman.

A traveller came to¹ a ford, and hired a boat to take² him across. The water being³ rather more agitated than was agreeable to him, ²he ¹asked the boatman if any⁴ person *was*⁵ [ever] lost in⁶ the passage. "Never", replied the boatman, „never. My brother was drowned⁷ here last week, but we found him again the⁸ next day."

1) an with the Acc. 2) um ihn zu übersetzen. 3) Translate: as (da) the water . . . was. 4) if any person, ob Jemand. 5) was = had been, . . . worden wäre. 6) auf or bei (Dat.). 7) was drowned = ertrank. 8) am or den (Acc.).

7.

Simplicity.

"Patrick, you¹ fool, cried a man to his neighbour, what makes you (didst) steal² after that rabbit, when³ your gun has no lock [on]?" — "Hush!⁴ hush! my dear, the rabbit does not know that."

1) du. 2) stehlen, 3) da doch. 4) Stille.

8.

Pope Leo X. and the Alchymist.

An alchymist who had dedicated a book to¹ Pope Leo the² Tenth, wherein he pretended to teach a method of making³ gold, expected to receive a magnificent present for it⁴. But the pope sent him only a large, empty purse, with this compliment: "Since⁵ you know⁶ how to make⁷ gold, you want nothing but⁸ a purse to⁹ put it in."

1) Put the dative of the article: dem Papst. 2) also in the dative (see Gram. Less. 11, § 11). 3) Inf. with zu (Gram. Less. 44. § 5). 4) dafür. 5) da (reason). 6) wissen. 7) how to make: translate *how one (man) gold makes*. 8) als. 9) um es hineinzu thun.

9.

Excessive Politeness.

Queen Elizabeth was¹ once making a journey through England; on² her approaching the city³ [of] Coventry, the mayor, with a numerous cavalcade, went⁴ out to meet her. On⁵ their return ²they ¹had to pass through a wide brook, and the mayor's horse, being⁶ thirsty, attempted several times to drink, but his cavalier prevented him⁷. The queen observing it, said to him: Pray, Mr. Mayor, permit your⁸ horse to drink. — The mayor, bowing⁹ very humbly, replied, Madam, it would be the highest presumption for my unworthy horse to drink, before Your Majesty's royal steed has satisfied his thirst.

1) was once making = made once. 2) on her appr. = when (als) she...approached. 3) Put the dative; see Gram. Less. 48, II. — 4) went out to meet her, kam or ging der B. ihr...entgegen. 5) bei. 6) Translate: which ²was ¹thirsty. 7) Observe that *him* refers to the neuter noun, das Pferd = es. 8) dative. 9) indem er sich demüthig verneigte. Gram. Less. 45, § 10.

10.

Troy¹.

Troy was a famous city. When Priam was king, ²the ³Greeks ¹came to the city. They besieged *it* ten years without success. They could not take it by force,² because its³ walls were high and broad; but at last it was⁴ taken by the stratagem of⁵ a wooden horse. This horse, which was filled with armed men, was⁴ admitted into the city as a gift to⁶ Minerva. In the middle⁷ of the night, when all were asleep⁸, ²the ³armed ⁴men ¹came out of the belly of the horse and burned the city.

1) Troja. 2) mit Gewalt. 3) ihre, referring to the feminine noun Troja or Stadt. 4) Passive voice wurde. 5) vermittelt eines. 6) für or an. 7) In der Mitte der Nacht. 8) were asleep = slept.

11.

¹ The ⁵ Watchman ⁴ robbed ² by ³ Soldiers.

Some soldiers ²once ¹fell upon a watchman in a small town, in a lonely street, and took away his money and his coat. He immediately went to¹ the captain of the regiment, to² complain of his misfortune. The captain asked him whether he was clothed with the waistcoat he³ now wore, when⁴ he was robbed by the soldiers. "Yes, Sir!" replied the poor fellow. "Then, my friend," rejoined the captain, "I can assure you, they do not belong to (zu) my company; otherwise⁵ ²they ¹would have left you (*Dat.*) neither waistcoat nor shirt.

1) Prep. zu. 2) um sich über sein U. zu beklagen. 3) Insert *which* before he. 4) when, with a Preterite tense is translated *als*, and requires the verb at the end of the clause (see Gram. Less. 36. 5) sonst.

12.

The Romans.

Romulus built the city [of]¹ Rome. The inhabitants were called Romans, and were accounted² very brave men. They loved their country, and fought to defend it. They chose¹ rather [to] die than [to] lose their liberty. This⁴ was dearer to them than life⁵. They carried [on]

1) Words in brackets are to be left out when translating. 2) were accounted, galten für... 3) wollten lieber. 4) Put the feminine (see Gram. Less. 23, § 4). — 5) Add the neuter article (Gram. Less. 38, § 7).

many wars with the Carthaginians, with various success. At last ²the ³Carthaginians ¹were⁶ conquered, and the city [of] Carthage *was* destroyed.

6) Passive voice.

13.

The Ass and the Wolf.

An ass had the misfortune to be met ¹ by a hungry wolf. "Have mercy on ² me," said the trembling animal; "I am a poor sick beast: look what a great thorn I have [run] into my foot!"

"Really, you quite grieve me ³," replied the wolf. "Conscientiously speaking,⁴ I feel myself compelled to free⁵ you of your misery."

He had scarcely spoken, when⁶ he tore² the suppliant donkey to pieces⁷.

1) Translate: to meet a h. wolf (dative). 2) mit. 3) du dauerst mich recht. 4) Put the Part. past: Gewissenhaft gesagt. 5) zu ziehen or zu befreien. 6) als. 7) to tear to pieces, zerreißen.

14.

Stentor.

In the Grecian army ²they ¹used to have three men in each battalion, to ¹communicate the commands of the officers [to] the men. Of these, ²one ¹carried a standard, and another a trumpet. But in the confusion and din of battle, ²neither a signal ¹could be² seen, nor a trumpet heard. The third man (who for this purpose was the strongest in the army) communicated then the commands by word³ of mouth. Homer relates of⁴ one of these men, ²Stentor ¹by name,⁵ that he shouted as⁶ loud as fifty other men. Hence⁷ a man with a powerful voice is said⁷ to possess the voice of Stentor, or a Stentorian voice.

1) Um . . . mitzutheilen. 2) Passive voice. 3) by word of m., mündlich. 4) Prep. von. 5) by name, Namen. 6) as loud as, ebenso laut (see Gram. Less. 19, § 8). — 7) Hence it is said . . . , translate: hence ²people (man) ¹say that a man . . . possesses.

15.

The ²Spectacles ¹found.

Some gentlemen of a Bible association, calling¹ upon an old woman to² see if she had a Bible, were severely

reproved with this answer: "Do you think, gentlemen, that I am a heathen³, that you should ask me⁴ such a question? Run, and fetch my Bible," said she to a little girl, "out of my drawer, that I may⁵ show it to the gentlemen." The Bible was brought, properly covered, to protect the binding. On opening⁶ it, ²the old woman ¹exclaimed: "Well⁷, how glad ²I ¹am that you *have* come, here are⁸ my spectacles that I have been⁹ looking for these *two years*, and did not know where to find¹⁰ them."

1) Calling upon, welche besuchten (*acc.*). 2) um zu sehen. 3) fem. eine Heidin. 4) daß sie eine solche Frage an mich richten or stellen. — 5) kann. 6) Beim Öffnen derselben. 7) Ei! 8) Use the singular: Hier ist meine Brille. 9) Use the present tense. See Gram. Less. 42, § 4. — 10) Elliptical Inf. = where I should or might find them.

16.

Dr. Franklin.

Dr. Franklin, in the early¹ part of his life, when he was a printer, had occasion to travel from Philadelphia to Boston. In² his journey, ²he ¹stopped at an inn, the landlord of which³ possessed all the inquisitive curiosity of his countrymen. Franklin had scarcely sat himself [down] to (zum) supper, when his landlord began to torment him with questions. He,⁴ well knowing the disposition of these people, and aware⁵ that answering⁵ one question, would only pave the way for twenty more⁶, determined to stop⁷ the landlord at once by³ requesting to see his wife, children and servants. When they were summoned, Franklin, solemnly, said: "My good friends, I sent for you⁹ here to give you an account of¹⁰ myself: my name is Benjamin Franklin; I am a printer, nineteen years of age; reside at Philadelphia, and am now going to Boston. I sent for you all⁹, that¹¹, if you wished for any further particulars, you might ask, and I inform you: this done¹², I hope that you will permit me to eat my supper in peace."

1) in seinen jüngern Jahren. 2) auf. 3) rel. pron. dessen Wirt. 4) He, well knowing . . . , da er . . . kannte. 2) wohl wußte, daß die Beantwortung einer Frage. 6) für zwanzig weitere. 7) zum Schweigen zu bringen. 8) dadurch, daß er . . . (see Gram. Less. 45, § 9). — 9) Ich habe Sie hierher rufen lassen. 10) über. 11) damit. 12) worauf.

17.

Dean Swift and his Servant.

As the late Dean Swift, attended ¹ by a servant, was once on a journey, they put up at an inn where they lodged all night; in the morning, ²the dean ¹called for ²his boots; the servant immediately took ³ them to him uncleaned. When the dean saw them, he said: "How is this, Tom?" — "As you are going to ride, I thought they would soon be dirty again." — "Very well," said the dean, "go and get ⁴ the horses ready."

In the mean time, the dean ordered the landlord to let his man have no breakfast. When the servant returned, he asked if the horses were ready. "Yes, Sir," answered the servant. — "Go, bring them ²out ¹then," said the dean. — "I have not had my breakfast yet, Sir," replied Tom. — "Oh! no matter for that," ⁵said the dean, "if you had, you would soon be hungry again." They mounted and rode off. On the way, the dean pulled a book out of his pocket, and began to read.

A gentleman met them, ⁶and seeing the Doctor reading, was not willing to disturb him, but passed by, till he met the servant. ⁶"Who is that gentleman?" said he to the man. — "My master, [Sir]." — "I know that, you blockhead," said the gentleman; "but where are you going?" — "We are going to heaven, Sir," replied Tom. — "How do you know that?" asked the gentleman. — "Because I am ⁷fasting, and my master is praying."

1) begleitet von. 2) nach. 3) brachte. 4) machte. 5) daß thut Nichts. 6) Put the dative. 7) I am fasting = I fast (see Gram. Less. 21, Note 1).

18.

The Egg of Columbus.

Petro Gonzalez de Mendoza, the Grand Cardinal of Spain, invited Columbus to ¹a banquet, where he assigned him the most honorable place at ²table, and had ³him served with the ceremonies which, in those punctilious times, were observed towards sovereigns. At ²this repast is said ⁴to have occurred the well known anecdote

1) zu. 2) bei (T). 3) had him served, ließ ihn... bedienen. 4) is said to have occurred, soll . . . geschehen or vorgekommen sein (see Gram. Less. 40, IV, § 4). —

of the egg. A ²shallow ²courtier ¹present, impatient of the honors paid⁵ to Columbus, and jealous of him as a foreigner, ³abruptly ¹asked ²him whether he thought that in case he had not discovered the Indies,⁶ there² were no other men who would be capable of the enterprise.

To⁷ this Columbus made⁸ no immediate reply, but took an egg and invited the company to make⁹ it stand upon one end. Every one attempted it, but in vain; whereupon he struck it upon the table, so as to break¹⁰ the end, and left it standing¹¹ on the broken part: illustrating¹² in this simple manner, that, when he had once shown the way to the new world, nothing was easier than to follow it (iñm).

This anecdote rests on the authority of the Italian historian Benzoni. It has been condemned as trivial, but the simplicity of the reproof constituted its severity and was characteristic¹³ of the practical sagacity of Columbus. The universal popularity of the anecdote is a proof of its¹⁴ merit.

Washington Irving.

5) Translate: which were paid to C., welche dem C. erwiesen wurden. 6) Westindien without an article. 7) es keine anderen M. gäbe. 8) to this, Hierauf or Auf dies gab C. 9) to make it stand, es .. zu stellen. 10) so daß er .. brach (see Gram. Less. 41, III, § 5). — 11) Use the Infinitive. 12) illustrating; begin a new sentence: Auf diese einfache Art zeigte er. 13) charakteristisch. 14) ihrem.

19.

The Dervise.

A Dervise, travelling through Tartary,¹ being arrived at² the town of Balk, went into the king's palace by mistake, as³ thinking it to be a public inn or caravansary. Having looked about him⁴ for some time, he entered into a long gallery, where he laid down his wallet, and spread his carpet in order to repose [himself] upon it after the manner of the eastern nations. He had not been long in this posture, before⁵ he was discovered by some of the guards, who asked him what⁶ was his business in that place. The Dervise told them he intended to take [up] his night's lodging⁷ in that caravansary. The guards let him know in a very angry manner, that

1) Durch die Tartarei. 2) in (dat.). 3) da er ihn für ... hielt. 4) um sich. 5) als. 6) what was his business, was er ... zu thun hätte. 7) seine Nachtherberge or seine Schlafstätte.

the house he was in,⁸ was not a caravansary, but the king's palace.

It happened that the king himself passed through the gallery during this debate, and smiling⁹ at the mistake of the Dervise, asked¹⁰ him how he could possibly be so dull as¹¹ not to distinguish a palace from a caravansary? "Sire," says the Dervise, "give me leave to ask Your Majesty a question or two." "Who were the persons that lodged in this house when it was first built?" The king replied, his ancestors. "And who," says the Dervise, "was the last person that lodged here?" The king replied, his father. "And who is it," says the Dervise, "that lodges here at present?" The king told him, that it was he himself.¹² "And who," says the Dervise, "will be here after you?" The king answered, the young prince, his son. "Ah! Sire," said the Dervise, "a house that changes its inhabitants so often, and receives such a perpetual succession of guests, is not a palace but¹³ a caravansary."

Spectator.

8) he was in, translate: *in which* (worin) *he was*. 9) und indem er über (acc.) ... lächelte. 10) translate: *asked he*. 11) as not to d., daß er ... nicht unterscheiden könnte. 12) daß er es selbst wäre (Gram. Less. 43, § 7). 13) sondern.

20.

The Painter who endeavoured to please every one.

A celebrated painter of antiquity¹ resolved one day to paint a picture the most perfect imaginable.² He had already become celebrated and excelled in his art; but in this case, endeavouring to surpass any thing³ he had ever done before, he formed the project to paint one entirely without defect. The picture being finished,⁴ and not considering⁵ himself a sufficient judge, he exhibited it in the market place, and begged the spectators to give their opinion, by⁶ marking with a pencil, which he had left for⁷ the purpose, all the defects⁸ they could possibly discover.

Every one marked that which appeared to him faulty; and the painter coming in the evening to take home his

1) Put the def. art.; see Gram. Less. 38, § 2. — 2) so vollkommen als es nur denkbar war. 3) Alles was. 4) To translate these Part. absolute see Gram. Less 45, § 10, b. — 5) halten. 6) dadurch, daß sie u. 7) zu. 8) add.: *which*.

picture perceived, to his great astonishment, that almost every feature of the face, and every fold of the drapery had been disapproved [of]. However, having a good opinion of⁹ his own talents, he had the courage to make a second trial.

The¹⁰ next day ²he ³again ¹exhibited his painting to the public eye, and begged the spectators to mark with the pencil, as¹¹ the day before, those parts which they considered most excellent; but when he came in the evening to examine it, ²he ¹found that the public had approved [of] every lineament.

This shows clearly that he who pleases the one,¹² may¹³ displease the other,¹² and that it is a folly for an author, whoever he may be, to aspire¹⁴ to please every one

9) von. 10) am. 11) wie am Tage vorher. 12) dative. 13) kann. 14) .. zu wollen.

21.

Canute's Reproof.

Canute, the greatest and most powerful monarch of his time, sovereign of Denmark and Norway, as well as of England, could not fail of meeting¹ with adulation from his courtiers. Some of his flatterers, breaking out one day in admiration of his grandeur, exclaimed that every thing² was² possible [for] him: upon which⁴ the monarch, it is said, ordered⁴ his chair to be set on the sea-shore, while the tide was rising, and as the waters approached, ²he ¹commanded them (*dat.*) to retire⁵ and to obey the voice⁶ of him⁷ who was lord of the ocean. —

He feigned to sit⁸ some time in expectation of their submission. — But when the sea still advanced towards him, and began to wash him with its billows, he turned⁹ towards his courtiers, and remarked to them that every creature in the universe was¹⁰ feeble and impotent, and that power¹¹ resided with¹² one Being alone, in whose

1) of meeting with ad., Schmeichelei von j. H. zu erfahren. — 2) every thing, Alles. 3) Subj. 4) Hierauf soll der König befohlen haben, daß man ... stelle. 5) Observe that *to retire* is in German a reflexive verb with sich. 6) Put the dative. 7) Dessen, der; Correlative pronoun (see Gram. Less. 24, § 2). — 8) als ob er ... säße. 9) refl. verb, wandte er sich ... 10) Subj. 11) Use the article. 12) in or bei.

hands were all [the] elements of nature; who could say to the ocean *thus far shalt thou go and no farther*; and who could level with his nod the most towering piles of¹³ human pride and ambition.

13) Use the article.

22.

General Ziethen.

It is well known that the late¹ king of Prussia, Frederick the Great, during the many and long wars in which he was engaged, not only³ shared¹ all [the]² dangers, but also the inconveniences of a common soldier.

Once² he¹ marched with his grenadier-guards till very late at night. At last² they¹ halted. The king dismounted and said: "Grenadiers, it is a cold night, therefore light a fire." This was² done immediately. The king wrapped himself [up] in his blue cloak, sat down³ on a few pieces of wood near the fire, and the soldiers placed themselves around him. At last General⁴ Ziethen came and took his place also on a bundle of wood. Both were extremely fatigued, and² gently¹ fell asleep. But the king very often opened his eyes, and, as he perceived that Ziethen had slipped off his seat,⁵ and that a grenadier was placing a faggot under his head for a pillow, ²he¹ said, with a loud voice: "Bravo! the old gentleman is fatigued."

Soon afterwards a grenadier got up, half asleep in order to light his pipe by the fire, but² carelessly¹ touched the General's foot. The good king, who was glad to see Ziethen take⁶ a little rest, arose suddenly, waved his hand, and² whisperingly¹ said: "Hist, grenadier! Take care not to wake the General: he is very drowsy."

The same officer² once¹ fell into a doze at the king's table. As some one present made a motion to rouse him, the king said: "Let him sleep: — he has watched long enough, that⁷ we might rest."

1) verstorben, ſelig. 2) Passive voice. 3) jeſte jid. 4) Put the article. 5) von ſeinem Siſe herab ... 6) 3. ein wenig ruhen zu ſehen. 7) damit wir ſchlafen können.

23.

Scarce Articles.

George the First, king of England, being once on a journey to Hanover, stopped at a little village in Hol-

land, and being¹ hungry asked [for] two or three eggs, which he ate while the postilions were changing horses⁸. When they were going away, the servant told his² Majesty that the inn-keeper had charged³ two hundred florins; on which the king sent for⁴ him and said: "How is it, Sir, that you charge⁵ me⁶ two hundred florins for three eggs? are they so scarce here?" — "No," replied the host, "eggs are abundant enough, but kings are excessively rare here; and we⁷ must make the most of⁷ them, when fortune⁸ does us the honour⁹ of throwing¹⁰ them in our way." — The king smiled, and bade the postilions drive on, telling the landlord, "*qu'il donnait ses œufs pour avoir des bœufs.*"

1) da er hungrig war. 2) Put the dative. 3) gefordert or verlangt. 4) to send for = rufen lassen. 5) fordern. 6) *Dat.* 7) wir müssen soviel Gewinn als möglich aus ihnen ziehen. 8) Put the article before. 9) to do the honour = die Ehre erweisen or erzeigen. 10) zu führen.

24.

Cross Questions.

Frederick the Great paid¹ so much attention to his regiments of guards, that he knew personally every one of the soldiers. Whenever he saw a fresh [one], he used to put² the three following questions to him²: "1st.³ How old are you? 2nd. How long have you been⁴ in my service? 3rd. Are you satisfied with your pay and treatment?" It happened that a young Frenchman, who did not understand three words of German, enlisted⁵ into the Prussian service, and Frederick, on seeing him, put the usual questions. The soldier had learned the answers, but in the same order as the king generally interrogated.

Unfortunately, on⁶ this occasion 2Frederick 1began by⁷ the second question: How long have you been in my service? — Twenty-one years, replied the Frenchman. — What! said the king, how old are you then⁸? — One year, was the reply. — Upon my word, said Frederick, you or I must be mad.⁹ — Both, replied the sol-

1) gab so sehr Acht auf *acc.*. 2) to put ... to him, an ihn zu stellen or richten. 3) ersten. 4) sind Sie schon (Gram. L. 42, I, § 4). 5) Translate: was enlisted, angeworben wurde ... 6) bei. 7) mit. 8) denn. 9) verrückt.

dier, according to¹⁰ what he had been taught. — Well,¹¹ said the astonished monarch, this is the first time that I was ever called a mad-man by one of my guards: what do you mean by it,¹² sir? — The poor fellow, seeing the king enraged, told him, in French, that he did not understand a word of German. — Oh! is it so? said Frederick; well, learn it as soon as possible, and I have no doubt but¹³ you will make¹⁴ a very good soldier.

10) nach dem, wie er gelehrt worden war. 11) Ei! 12) damit (was wollen Sie damit sagen?). 13) daß. 14) abgeben (*acc.*) or werden (*nom.*).

25.

Female Heroism.

Robert, a gamekeeper, residing¹ in a solitary house near Weilheim, was one day gone to church with his family, leaving at home a daughter aged sixteen. They had not been long gone, when [there] appeared at the door an old man, apparently half dead with² cold. Feeling³ for his situation, ²she ¹let him in and went into the kitchen to prepare him some soup. Through a window, which communicated⁴ from the room in which she had left him, ²she ¹perceived that he had⁵ dropped the beard⁶ he wore, when he entered, and that he now appeared as a robust man, and was pacing⁷ the chamber with a poniard in his hand.

Finding no mode of escape, she armed herself with a chopper in one hand, and the boiling soup in the other; and entering⁸ the room where he was, first threw⁹ the soup into his face, and then struck¹⁰ him a blow on his neck with the chopper, which brought¹¹ him insensible to the ground.

At¹² this moment another knock at the door occasioned her to look out of an upper window, when she saw a strange hunter, who demanded admittance, and, on her refusal, threatened to break¹³ open the door. She immediately ¹took her father's gun, and as he was proceeding¹⁴ to put his threats into execution, she shot him through

1) Translate: who . . . resided. 2) vor Kälte. 3) aus Mitleid fühlen mit. 4) Translate: which stood in communication (Verbindung) with. 5) . . . hatte fallen lassen. 6) Add.: which. 7) und im Zimmer hin- und herging. 8) in (*acc.*). 9) Add.: she, warf sie ihm zuerst . . . (Gram. Less. 41, II, § 2). — 10) gab sie. 11) streden. 12) in. 13) aufzubrechen. 14) als er Anstalt machte.

the right shoulder, on which¹⁵ he made¹⁶ his way back into the forest. Half an hour afterwards, a third person came and asked after an old man who must have passed that way. She said she knew nothing of him; and as he was proceeding¹⁴ to break open the door, having¹⁷ by useless threats endeavoured to prevail upon her¹⁷ to open it, she¹ shot him dead on the spot.¹⁸

The incitements to her courage being now at¹⁹ an end, her spirits began to sink, and she fired and screamed from the windows, until some persons were attracted to the house; but nothing could induce her to open the door until the return²⁰ of the family from church.

15) worauf (see Gram. Less. 36, c). — 16) nahm. 17) nachdem er . . . versucht hatte, sie zu bewegen. 18) auf der Stelle. 19) am Ende. 20) bis die F . . . zurückkehrte.

26.

The two Merchants.

A Persian merchant, having occasion¹ to travel on business, deposited a hundred-weight [of] silver with² a neighbour. On² his return he asked (bat) to have³ it restored to him. "Your silver!" said the other, "alas! I have it no longer: I regret to say that a rat has devoured the whole; I was very angry with⁴ my servants, but what could I do? Every one is liable [to] accidents."

The merchant was astonished at this prodigy; but, nevertheless, pretended⁵ to believe it. Some days after, meeting the child of his perfidious neighbour, he carried him to his house, concealed him, and invited the father to dinner. The latter excused himself, and bursting into tears, said: "I beg [of] you to allow me to decline. Never again shall I know happiness. I had an only son, whom I loved better than my life; alas! how shall I speak it? I have him no longer. He has been stolen [from] me: have pity on⁶ my misfortune."

The merchant replied: "Yesterday evening, about dusk⁷ a screech-owl pounced upon your son, and carried him off to⁸ some ruin." — "How can I credit," said the father, "that an owl could ever carry off so large a booty?"

1) der or welcher Veranlassung hatte, eine Geschäftsreise zu machen. 2) bei. 3) Translate: that it should be restored to him. 4) gegen 5) stellte sich, als ob er. 6) mit. 7) bei Einbruch der Nacht. 8) in eine Ruine.

If necessary, my son could have caught the bird." — "I can't pretend⁹ to tell you how," replied the other, „excepting that I saw it with my own eyes, and I must observe that I cannot perceive¹⁰ what¹¹ right you have to doubt it, when I say so (es). What can there be remarkable in¹² a screech-owl carrying off¹² a child weighing but fifty pounds, when a rat will devour silver, and a whole hundred-weight too." The other, comprehending what he meant, gave the merchant his silver, who returned him his hopeful son.

A similar discussion took place¹³ between two travellers. One of them was of the class which sees nothing but through a magnifying¹⁴ glass, and finds everything gigantic, "I have seen," ²he ¹says, "a cabbage larger than a house." — "And I," says the other, "a saucepan as large as a church." The first laughs at him, the other replies: "Softly, friend, softly, the saucepan was made on purpose¹⁵ to boil your cabbage."

9) behaupten. 10) einsehen. 11) was für ein. 12) wenn eine Nachtkeule . . . wegträgt. 13) fand . . . statt. 14) ein Vergrößerungs-
glas. 15) in der Absicht.

27.

Peter the Hermit.

Peter, the Hermit, a native¹ of Amiens, in Picardy, was a man of great zeal, courage, and piety. He had made a pilgrimage to² the holy sepulchre at Jerusalem, and beheld, with indignation, the cruel manner in (auf *acc.*) which the Christians were treated by the Infidels, who were in the possession of the place. Unable to repress his resentment, ²he ¹entertained³, upon⁴ his return, the bold design of freeing⁵ the whole country from the Mahometan yoke, and of restoring to the Christians the land where their religion was first propagated. He ²first ¹proposed⁶ his views to⁷ Martin II., at that time pope, who assisted this bold enthusiast in his aims⁸.

Peter, warmed⁹ with a zeal that knew no bounds, began to preach the Crusade, and to excite the princes of Christendom to the recovery¹⁰ of the Holy Land.

1) A native of A. = gebürtig aus A. in der Pifardie. 2) nach. 3) faßte er. 4) bei. 5) . . . zu befreien und . . . zurückzugeben. 6) vorlegen, reg. v. 7) dem damaligen Papst M. 8) Plänen. 9) durchglüht von. 10) zur Wieder-Eroberung.

Bare-headed and bare-footed, he travelled from court to court, preaching, as¹¹ he went, and inflaming the zeal of every rank¹² of people. The fame of his design being thus diffused, prelates, nobles¹³, and princes, concurred¹⁴ in¹⁵ seconding it; and, at (in) a council held at Clermont, where the pope himself exhorted to the undertaking, the whole assembly¹ cried out with one voice, as, if¹⁶ by inspiration: *It is the will of God. It is the will of God.* From that time, nothing was seen¹⁷ but a universal migration of the western nations into¹⁸ the east; men of all ranks¹⁹ flew to²⁰ arms with the utmost alacrity, and bore the sign of the cross upon their right shoulder, as a mark²¹ of their devotion to²² the cause. Goldsmith.

11) wie. 12) Klasse, f. 13) Edelleute. 14) wetteifern. 15) ihn zu unterstützen (Gram. Less. 45, § 7). — 16) als wie. 17) Translate: one saw nothing but, sah man Nichts als . . . 18) nach dem Osten or in den Orient. 19) Stände. 20) eilen zu with the article. 21) Beweis, m. 22) an.

28.

Filial Affection of a Page.

The emperor Charles V. (the fifth) had a page, named Athanasius d'Ayala, whose father had had the imprudence to engage¹ in a conspiracy against his monarch; he was proscribed, his property confiscated, and he himself was obliged to flee. Athanasius was yet very young, not being² more than fourteen, and consequently did not³ receive any salary at court; his tender heart was deeply afflicted at the situation of his father, who was reduced⁴ to poverty, and he had no means of sending him assistance. At length, unable to support the idea of⁵ the sufferings of his parent, the young Athanasius sold the horse that was allowed him for his exercises,⁶ and sent the money to his father.

The horse was soon missed, and the page interrogated; but he obstinately refused to give any account⁷ of him. The emperor, being informed of the circumstance, ordered⁸ Athanasius to be brought⁸ before him, and insisted⁹ on knowing what he had done with the

1) sich einzulassen . . . in (acc.). 2) Add.: da er erst . . . alt war. 3) not any, kein. 4) gestürzt in. 5) an. 6) Reit-Übungen. 7) Rechnung darüber zu geben. 8) ordered A. to be br. b. him = ließ A. vor sich bringen. 9) bestand darauf zu erfahren.

horse. The youth immediately fell on his¹⁰ knees, and bursting into tears confessed the whole, saying: "I hope¹¹ Your Majesty will pardon me¹², for, if my father has forgotten his duty to his king, he is nevertheless my father, and nothing could excuse me, if I were¹³ to forget my duty towards him."

10) *acc.* 11) *Add.*: that, daß. 12) *Dative.* 13) if I were to, wenn ich . . . vergeffen würde or sollte.

29.

Delicacy of Alphonso, King of Aragon.

Alphonso, king of Aragon, went, one day, to a jeweller's to purchase some diamonds for (als) presents to¹ a foreign prince. He was accompanied by² several courtiers, and the jeweller spread his finest diamonds and other precious stones before them (*dat.*) without hesitation. The prince, after making his purchases,³ retired; but he had scarcely left the house, when the jeweller came⁴ [after] him, and requested he would do⁵ him the honour to return [for] a moment, as he had something important to say [to] him. The prince and his courtiers re-entered, and the jeweller then said that a diamond of great value had been taken by [some] one of his attendants.

Alphonso looked sternly at those who accompanied him, saying: "Whichever⁶ of you has stolen the diamond, he deserves the most severe punishment; but the publication of his name might⁷ perhaps tarnish the reputation of an honorable family; I will spare⁸ them that disgrace." He then desired the jeweller to bring a large pot⁹ full of bran. When it was brought, he ordered every one of the attendants to plunge his right hand closed into the pot, and to draw it out quite open. It was done; and, the bran being¹⁰ sifted, the diamond was found. The prince then addressed them, saying: Gentlemen, I will not suspect any one among you; I will forget the affair: the culpable [person] cannot escape the torment¹¹ of his guilty conscience.

1) für. 2) von. 3) Einkäufe. 4) folgte. 5) er möchte ihm . . . erweisen. 6) wer auch. 7) könnte. 8) ihnen erlassen. 9) einen großen mit Kleie gefüllten Topf. 10) als man die Kleie siebte. 11) Use the dative with the verb entrinnen or entgehen (see Gram. L. 48, II.).

Walter Scott at School.¹

When this celebrated author was at school,¹ he was very laborious; yet it appears that his intellect was not brilliant, and that he owed² his great success in after-life³ to² his indefatigable perseverance.

The following anecdote is⁴ found in his autobiography⁵ lately published.

"There was," says Walter Scott, "a boy in my class who stood⁶ always at the top, and I could not, with all my efforts, supplant⁷ him. Day came after day, and still he kept his place; at length I observed that, when a question⁸ was asked⁸ him, he always fumbled with his fingers at⁹ a particular button on the lower part of his waistcoat, while seeking an answer. I thought therefore, if¹⁰ I could remove the button slyly, the surprise at not finding¹¹ it, might derange¹² his ideas at the next interrogation of the class, and give me a chance of taking him down.⁷ The button was therefore removed without his perceiving¹³ it. Great was my anxiety to know the success of my measure, and it succeeded but too well.

"The hour of interrogation¹⁴ arrived, and the boy was questioned: he sought, as¹⁵ usual, with his fingers, [for] the friendly button, but he could not find it. Disconcerted¹⁶ he looked down:¹⁶ the talisman was gone, his ideas became confused, he could not reply. I seized the opportunity, answered¹⁷ the question, and took his place, which he never recovered, nor do¹⁸ I believe he ever suspected the author of the trick.

"I have often met [with] him since we entered the world, and never without¹⁹ feeling my conscience reproach me. Frequently have I resolved to make him some amends²⁰ by rendering²¹ him a service; but an opportunity did not present itself, and I fear²² I did not seek

1) in der Schule. 2) er . . . verdankte (dative). 3) im spätern Leben. 4) findet sich. 5) Selbstbiographie. 6) who stood at the top, der . . . oben saß. 7) verdrängen, hinunter bringen. 8) wann er gefragt wurde. 9) an. 10) daß wenn . . . 11) ihn nicht zu finden. 12) verwirren. 13) ohne daß er . . . (Gram. L. 45, § 7). — 14) des Abfragens. 15) wie. 16) verlegen oder außer Fassung gebracht, blickte er hinunter. 17) beantwortete. 18) Translate: and I do not bel. that. — 19) ohne zu fühlen, daß. 20) es ihm zu vergelten, ihn einigermaßen zu entschädigen. 21) dadurch, daß ich ihm . . . leistete. 22) Add.: that.

one with as much ardour as I sought to supplant him at school."

Lockhart.

31.

Diamond cuts Diamond.¹

A gentleman of Oliver Cromwell's domestic² establishment had conceived³ a great affection for the Protector's youngest daughter; the young lady did not discourage him, and at length he proposed a secret marriage, as there was no hope of obtaining her father's consent. A person⁴ having discovered the secret, communicated it to Cromwell, who gave him orders to watch and to let him know⁵ the next time⁶ the gentleman and his daughter should⁷ be together. This happened on the following day, and Cromwell, being informed of it, entered suddenly his daughter's room, where he found the gentleman on his knees⁸ before her.

The Protector, in a fury, demanded an explanation of his conduct, and the other with, great presence of mind, replied: May⁹ it please Your Highness, I have a great affection for your daughter's chamber-maid; but she refuses¹⁰ to give me her hand; so, thinking this young lady had great influence over her, I was soliciting that she would (möchte) intercede for me.

— Oh! replied Oliver, if that's the case. I will see what I can do for you. — And calling the young woman, he said to her: "Why do you refuse [the honour] of marrying Mr. White? he is my friend, and I insist¹¹ that you give your consent." — The young woman, who had no¹² objection, blushed deeply, and Cromwell said: Ah! I see how it is, a little coquetry: go and call the chaplain. — The chaplain came, and Oliver ordered him immediately to marry¹³ Mr. White and the chamber-maid. Mr. W. was obliged to submit¹⁰ or to expose himself to the vengeance of Cromwell, who, however, to¹⁴ render the bride more attractive, gave her a portion of five hundred pounds.

1) Wie du mir, so ich dir or List über List. 2) domestic establ.: der Haushalt. 3) gefaßt. 4) Jemand der ... 5) ihn wissen zu lassen. 6) Add.: when wann. 7) würden. 8) auf den Knien (Gram. 41, II, § 1). — 9) Möge es. 10) reflect. verb. 11) Ich bestehe darauf, daß ... 12) welche nichts dagegen hatte. 13) zu trauen. 14) um ... zu machen.

32.

Humanity of Louis XIV.

During the reign of Louis the Fourteenth¹ an Italian chemist, named Poli, came to Paris, and having obtained an audience of² the king, informed him that he had discovered a composition ten times more destructive than gunpowder. Louis was fond of³ chemistry, and ordered the Italian to prepare the composition, and to make the necessary experiments on⁴ a certain day in his presence.

It was done, and every thing succeeded according to (nach) the wishes of Poli who then observed to the king that it would give him a great superiority over his enemies. — It is true, said Louis, and your invention is very ingenious; but mankind⁵ already possess⁵ sufficient means of destroying⁶ each other; you shall be handsomely rewarded for your trouble and ingenuity, but I charge⁷ you, for the (zur) honour of human nature, never¹ to divulge your secret.

1) Put the Genitive case Gram. L. 11, § 10 & 11). — 2) bei. 3) war ein Freund von der Chemie. 4) an. 5) das Menschengeschlecht besitzt schon. 6) Infinitive with zu (Gram. L. 44, § 5). — 7) ich verpflichte Sie.

33.

The cunning Cutler.

There is¹ in London, in a place called Charing-cross, a very fine statue in bronze² of Charles the First on horseback. After the revolution and the decapitation of that monarch, ²the ³statue ¹was taken down and sold to a cutler, who undertook to demolish it. He ²immediately ¹manufactured a great number of knives and forks with bronze handles, and exposed them in his shop as the produce³ of the statue, which was supposed⁴ to have been melted. They were so rapidly bought, both⁵ by the friends and⁵ the enemies of the late monarch, that the cutler soon made a⁶ fortune, and retired⁷ from business.⁸

Soon after the restoration [it] was proposed to erect a new statue to⁹ the memory of⁹ the unfortunate king;

1) Es steht. 2) von Erz or adj. ehern. 3) als das Erzeugnis von der Bildsäule. 4) von der man glaubte, daß sie ... 5) both ... and, sowohl von ... als von. 6) Translate: sich .. ein Vermögen machte. 7) reflect. verb. 8) Put the plural with the def. art. 9) zum Andenken an (acc.).

the cutler, hearing of this, informed the government that he could spare them¹⁰ the trouble and expense¹¹ of casting a statue, as the old one was yet in his possession, and that he would sell it to them at a moderate price. The bargain was concluded¹², and the statue, which he had secretly preserved, was re-elevated on the pedestal at (in) Charing-cross, where it now stands.

10) Dat. 11) Plural: die Kosten. 12) geschlossen.

34.

Absence of Mind.¹

Among the many curious examples of abstraction¹ of mind, we have the following laughable [one] of² the celebrated English philosopher Newton.

Being one morning deeply engaged³ in the study of some difficult problem, he would not leave it to⁴ go and breakfast with the family. His housekeeper, however, fearing that long fasting⁵ might make him ill, sent one of the servants into his room, with an egg and a saucepan of water. The servant was told⁶ to boil the egg, and stay while her master ate it; but Newton, wishing to be alone, sent her away, saying⁷ he would cook it himself. The servant, after placing it by the side⁸ of his watch on the table, and telling him to let it boil three minutes, went out; but fearing he might forget it, she returned soon after, and found him standing by the fire-side, with the egg in his hand, his watch boiling⁹ in the saucepan, and he quite unconscious¹⁰ of the mistake he had committed.

1) Zerstreuung. 2) von. 3) engaged in, beschäftigt mit. 4) um .. zu (Gram. Less. 44, § 10). — 5) das Fasten, put the article. — 6) Die Magd wurde geheißen. 7) indem er sagte. 8) neben (acc.). — 9) Translate: while his watch .. boiled. 10) unconscious of = er dachte nicht an ...

35.

The Value of Time.

King Alfred, who ascended the throne of England in¹ 871, and who, like² Charlemagne, by his magnanimity and wise government, acquired the title of the Great³,

1) im Jahr. 2) wie. 3) Put the Nominative case: der Große.

was a prudent economizer of time, well knowing that a moment lost can never be recovered. Alfred wished to divide the day into equal portions, in order to appropriate a certain space⁴ of time [to] the⁵ accomplishment of the different objects⁶ he had in view.⁶

This was not an easy matter,⁷ as clocks⁸ were at that time nearly unknown in Europe, and quite unknown in England. It is true that in⁹ fine weather the flight of time could be marked, in some¹⁰ degree, by the course of the sun; but in the night, and when (wann) the sun was hidden¹¹ by clouds, there were no means of judging.

The king, after much reflection and many experiments, ordered¹² a certain quantity of wax to be¹² made into (zu) six candles of equal length and thickness, which, being¹³ lighted one after the other, (as¹⁴ he had found by experience), would last¹⁵ from mid-day to mid-day. On each of these candles, he marked twelve divisions or inches, so that he knew nearly how the day was going,¹⁶ as the consumption¹⁷ of each candle marked the expiration of a sixth part, or about four hours, and each division or inch denoted the lapse of (von) twenty minutes.

By these means ²Alfred ¹obtained what he desired, an exact admeasurement¹⁸ of time; and the improvements which took place during his reign, show that [both] the king and his people had learned [to] appreciate its value.

4) space of time = Zeitraum, *m.* 5) *dat.* 6) *Add.*: which, welche er vorhatte or in Aussicht hatte. 7) nichts Leichtes. 8) Use the definite article. 9) bei. 10) in some degree, einigermaßen. 11) verdeckt. — 12) ließ eine gewisse Menge Wachs . . . verarbeiten. 13) wenn sie . . . angezündet wurden. 14) wie. 15) would last, . . . zu dauern pflegten. 16) verging. 17) die Verbrennung. 18) Maß, *n.*, Abmessung, *f.*

36.

The ²Bagpiper ¹revived.

The following event happened in London during the great plague, which in 1665 carried off nearly 100,000 of the inhabitants.

A Scotch bagpiper used to get¹ his living by² sitting and playing his bagpipes every day on the steps of³ St. Andrew's church in Holborn. In order to escape the

1) to get his living, sein Brot zu verdienen. 2) dadurch, daß er . . . saß u. (see Gram. Less. 45, § 7). — 3) Use the article: der Sankt-Andreaskirche.

contagion, ² he ¹ drank a great deal of gin; and, one day, having taken more than usual, ² he ¹ became so drunk, that he fell ⁴ fast asleep on the steps. It was the custom, during the prevalence of that terrible disease, to send carts about every night to ⁵ collect the dead, and carry them to a common grave or deep pit, of which several had been made in the environs of London.

The men, passing ⁶ with the cart up Holborn-hill, and seeing the piper extended on the steps, ² naturally ¹ thought ⁷ it *was* a dead body, and tossed him into the cart among the others, without observing ⁸ that he had his bagpipe under his arm, and without paying any attention to ⁹ his dog, which followed the cart, barking and howling most ¹⁰ piteously.

The rumbling of the cart over the stones and the cries of the poor dog, ² soon ¹ awoke the piper from his drunken lethargy, and not being able to discover where he was, began squeezing ¹¹ his bagpipe and playing ¹¹ a Scotch air to the great astonishment and terror of the carters, who immediately fetched lights, and found the Scot sitting erect amid the dead bodies, playing his pipes. He was soon released and restored to his faithful dog. The piper became, from ¹² this event, so celebrated, that one of the first sculptors of that epoch made a statue of ¹³ him and his dog, which is still to be seen ¹⁴ in London.

4) fell asleep, einschlief. 5) um ... zu (see Gram. Less. 44, § 10). — 6) Als die Männer ... *hinaufführen und* ... 7) Insert *sie* (they). 8) Use the Infinitive with *zu* (Gram. Less. 44, § 9). — 9) *auf* with the acc. 10) ganz jämmerlich. 11) Use the Inf. with *zu*. 12) durch. 13) von. 14) to be seen, *zu sehen* (Gram. Less. 44, § 8, Note).

37.

Mercury and the Woodman.

A man was felling a tree on the bank of a river and ² by ³ chance ¹ let his hatchet slip out of his hand, which dropped into the water, and immediately sunk to ¹ the bottom. Being, therefore, in great distress for ² the loss of his tool, ² he ¹ sat down and bemoaned himself most lamentably.

Upon this ² Mercury ¹ appeared [to] him, and, having learnt the cause of his complaint, dived ³ to the bottom

1) auf den Grund. 2) wegen (Gen. case). 3) Add. *he*.

of the river, and, coming up again, shewed the man⁴ a golden hatchet, asking if that were his. He denied⁵ that it was. Upon which Mercury dived a second time, and brought ³up ¹a ²silver [one].⁶ The man refused it, alleging, likewise, that this was not his. He dived a third time, and fetched up the hatchet the man had lost; upon sight⁷ of which the poor man was overjoyed, and took it with all humility and thankfulness.

Mercury was so pleased with the fellow's honesty, that he gave him the other two into the bargain,⁸ as a reward for his just dealing. The man goes to his companions, and gives them an account of⁹ what happened; one of them went presently to the river [side], and let his hatchet fall designedly into the stream; then, sitting down upon the bank, he commenced weeping and lamenting, as if he had been really and sorely afflicted.

Mercury appeared as before, and, diving, brought him up a golden hatchet, asking if that were the hatchet he had lost. Transported at¹⁰ the precious metal, he answered yes, and went to snatch it greedily. But the god, detesting his abominable impudence, ²not ³only ¹refused¹¹ to give him that, but would¹² not even let him have his own hatchet again.

Æsop.

4) Put the dative. 5) Translate: He said that it was not, daß sie es nicht wäre. 6) *one* after an adjective is not to be translated (Gram. Less. 20, I, Obs. 2). — 7) bei deren Anblick (Gram. Less. 41, III, § 1, *Verb. last*). 8) oben drein. 9) von dem was. 10) entzündt über (acc.). 11) refl. v. sich weigern. 12) sondern wollte ihm nicht einmal ... wieder geben.

38.

The Dog and the Eels.

A person¹ had a spoodle-dog ²so ¹intelligent that he was frequently sent on errands²; they³ used to write on a piece of paper what was wanted, and giving him a basket in his mouth, he would ⁴go and ²punctually ¹execute his commission. One day, the servants wished to have some sport with him, and writing an order for three pounds of live eels, sent poor Fidèle to fetch them, one⁶ of the servants following at⁶ some distance. The eels were put into the basket, and the poor dog

2) Jemand. 2) um Aufträge zu besorgen. 3) man pflegte. — 4) = he went, ging er. 5) Use the article. (Gram. L. 11, § 1. Note 1). 6) während einer .. in einiger Entfernung.

trotted off with them; but he had not gone far, when he saw some⁷ of them slipping over the edge; he set the basket down,⁸ tapped them with his paw and made them go in⁹; he ²then ¹took up his load and set off¹⁰ towards home. In a few moments several of the eels were on the pavement, and poor Fidèle, beginning to be enraged, took them up in his mouth, shook them well, and put them again into the basket; which was scarcely done, when others had crawled out. At length, quite out of patience¹¹, he put⁸ down the basket, and taking the eels one by¹² one between his teeth, bit them so that they were incapable of crawling out; after this he took¹³ them home, but from that day would¹⁴ never more go to market.

7) daß einige. 8) to set or put down, niederstellen. 9) hinein. 10) machte sich auf den Heimweg. 11) verlor er ganz die Geduld. 12) einen nach dem andern. 13) trug. 14) Add: he.

39.

The Dervise and the Atheist.

Atheists are those ridiculous and impious persons¹ who, contrary to the evidence of their senses, pretend not to believe in² the existence of God.

One of them was disputing with a dervise, and said to him: "You tell me that God is omnipresent, yet I cannot see him anywhere:³ show him to me, and I will believe it. — Again I say that a man ought not to be punished for⁴ his crimes by your laws, since you say that everything is done by the will of God. — You say also that Satan is punished by being condemned to hell-fire;⁵ now, as he is said to be⁶ of that element, what injury can fire do to itself (sich selbst)?"

The dervise, after a moment's reflection, took up a large lump of earth, struck⁷ the atheist a violent blow with it, and then left him. The latter went directly to the cadî,⁸ complained of the injury, and demanded justice. The dervise was summoned to answer,⁹ why, instead of replying to the man, he had struck him. — What I did, replied the dervise, was in¹⁰ answer to his

1) Menschen. 2) an. 3) not anywhere = nirgendß. 4) wegen. 5) zum Höllenfeuer or höllischen Feuer. 6) da man sagt, er bestehe aus . . . 7) versetzte dem A. 8) zu dem Richter. 9) um sich zu verantworten. 10) geschah als Antwort auf.

ridiculous questions. Of what does he complain? He says he has a pain; let him¹¹ show it, if he wishes us to believe him; he accuses me of crime, yet he says that a man ought not to be punished by our laws, since everything, according to our doctrine, was under the direction¹² of God; he complains that I have injured him by striking him with a piece of earth; and he maintains that an element can do no harm to itself:¹³ of what then does he complain? The atheist was confounded, and retired amidst the railleries of the auditors.

To be¹⁴ convinced of the hypocrisy of those infidels we should see one of them on a bed¹⁵ of death; it would be a lesson for¹⁶ the others.

11) er soll ihn zeigen (see Gram. Less. 43, III, § 11, Note 1). — 12) Leitung, f. 13) sich selbst. 14) Um . . . zu. 15) Totenbett. 16) eine Warnung, Lehre.

40.

The Queen of Spain has no Legs.

When the German princess Marie of Neuburg, who became wife¹ of Philipp IV. of Spain, was on her way to Madrid, she passed through a little town, in Spain, famous for² its manufactory of gloves and stockings. The citizens and magistrates thought they could not better express their joy for the reception of their new queen, than by presenting her a sample of those commodities for which their town was remarkable. The major-domo, who conducted the princess, received the gloves very graciously; but when the stockings were presented, he flung them away with indignation, and severely reprimanded the deputation for³ their indecency.

"Know," said he, "that a queen of Spain has no legs."

The young queen, unacquainted with the etiquette, customs and prejudices of the Spanish court, imagined⁴ that⁵ they were really going to cut off^h her legs. She burst into tears, begging they would conduct her back into Germany, for [that] she never could endure such an operation. It was with great difficulty that they ap-

1) die Gemahlin. 2) wegen or durch. 3) wegen ihrer Unanständigkeit. 4) reflect. verb., sich einbilden. 5) that they were going . . . , daß man ihr . . . die Beine ab schneiden wollte.

peased her. The king, it is said⁶, never laughed more heartily than at⁷ the recital of this adventure. *Hume's Essays.*

6) soll ... gelacht haben (see Gram. L. 40, VI, § 4). 7) über.

41.

The Wolf and the Lamb.

One¹ hot, sultry day, a wolf and a lamb happened² to come, just at the same time, to a clear brook to quench their thirst. The wolf stood upon the higher ground³ and the lamb at some distance from him down the current.⁴ However, the wolf, having a mind⁵ to pick a quarrel with him, asked him, why he (eš) troubled the water, and made it so muddy that he could not drink; and at the same time demanded⁶ satisfaction.

The lamb, frightened at⁷ this threatening charge, told him, in a tone as mild as possible, that he could not conceive how that could be, since the water which he drank, ran⁸ down from the wolf to him, and therefore it could⁸ not be disturbed so far up the stream.

Be that as it may⁹, replied the wolf, you are a rascal, and I have been told¹⁰ that you treated me with ill language¹¹ behind my back about half a year ago. Upon my word, says the lamb, the time you mention was before I was born. That may be, replied the wolf; but it was no later than yesterday that I saw your father encouraging the hounds that were pursuing me. Pardon me! answered the lamb, my poor father fell a victim to the butcher's knife upwards of a month since.¹² It was your mother, then,¹³ replied the savage beast. My mother, said the innocent lamb, died on the day¹⁴ I was born. Dead or not, vociferated the wolf, as¹⁵ he gnashed his teeth in rage, I know very well that all the breed¹⁶ of you hate¹⁷ me, and therefore I am determined to have¹⁸ my revenge. So saying, he sprang upon the poor innocent, defenceless thing, tore it to pieces and devoured it.

1) An einem. 2) happened to come, *translate*: came by chance (zufällig). 3) höher oben. 4) strom-abwärts or weiter unten. 5) da jedoch der W. Lust hatte. 6) verlangte. 7) über (acc.) 8) Subj. (oblique narration). 9) Sei dem, wie ihm wolle. 10) man hat mir gesagt. 11) to treat with ill l. = Einen verleumden or Einem übel nachreden. 12) vor mehr als einem Monat. 13) dann, begins the sentence. 14) an dem Tage, an welchem or als. 15) indem. 16) euer ganze Brut or euer ganzes Geschlecht. 17) haßt (sing.). 18) zu nehmen.

Honourable Conduct of King John of France.

The name of [John] does not appear to have been in favour, either¹ in the royal families of England or of France, as we find but² one monarch of that name in each of those countries, unless we reckon the John who reigned but² four days in France, from the 15th to³ the 19th of November 1316.

The characters⁴ of the other two Johns were very opposite [to] each other. John of England was cruel, vindictive, rapacious, and cowardly; and during a reign of nearly seventeen years was⁵ perpetually at⁶ war with his subjects. John of France, on the contrary, whose reign was nearly as long (from 1350 to 1364), occupied himself so much about⁷ the welfare of his people, that he acquired the surname [of] the Good.

John, after fighting heroically at the battle of Poitiers, had the misfortune to be made prisoner by the English. He was taken⁸ to London, where he remained until a treaty was signed, by which he agreed to pay three millions of gold crowns for⁹ the ransom of himself and the other prisoners, and to leave Gascony, Calais, Guines, and several other places in¹⁰ possession of the English.

The king was then set at (in) liberty, and returned to France, leaving¹¹ the dukes of Anjou and Berry, his sons, the duke of Orleans, his brother, and the duke of Bourbon, his cousin, as hostages for the payment of the ransom. Some difficulties having¹² arisen as to the execution of the treaty, the princes obtained permission to go over to Calais on¹³ parole saying they should be better able to explain and terminate the differences there than in England. The duke of Anjou, however, violated his parole, and fled to Paris.

John, highly displeased¹⁴ at¹⁵ such want of faith, immediately returned to London, and delivered himself

1) Translate: neither — nor, instead of: not either — or.
2) nur. 3) bis zum. 4) For this plural see Gram. L. 9, § 1, Note. —
5) Add.: he. 6) im Krieg. 7) mit. 8) nach L. geführt. 9) als Lösegeld für sich u. 10) im Besitz. 11) indem er . . . zurückließ. 12) da sich einige Schwierigkeiten erhoben hatten in Betreff der U. 12) auf Ehrenwort. 14) höchst aufgebracht. 15) über eine solche Wortbrüchigkeit.

prisoner to ²Edward, ¹king of England, saying: "*If honour is banished from every other place, it ought to remain sacred in the breast of kings.*"

Edward assigned the palace¹⁶ of the Savoy¹⁶ to the king for his residence; but he was soon after attacked by an illness which in a few weeks terminated his existence. His body was sent to France with a splendid retinue, and buried at the Abbey of St. Denis, which is the general burial-place of the French monarchs, as¹⁷ Westminster Abbey and Windsor Castle are¹⁸ for the sovereigns of England.

16) den Savoy-Palast. 17) wie die W. Abtei. 18) es . . . sind.

43.

A Dog's Will.¹

A gentleman in the country possessed a valuable dog, which had twice saved him from² drowning, and several times protected him against thieves; he was consequently much attached³ to him. At length ²the ³poor ⁴animal ¹became old and died, and the master in memory of his fidelity, buried him at the end of his garden, which was near (neben) the church-yard; he also had⁴ a monument placed over him, with an epitaph in the following words: "Here lies one whose virtues rendered him more worthy of⁵ consecrated ground than many who are there interred."

Some busy persons immediately informed the magistrate, denouncing the gentleman as an atheist. The magistrate sent for him, reproached him with⁶ his impiety, and threatened to accuse him before the ecclesiastical court. The gentleman began to be alarmed, but recollecting himself,⁷ he said to the magistrate: Sir, your observations are very just, and if my dog had not possessed almost human intelligence, I should merit the punishment with which you threaten me. It would be tiresome to relate to you the history of the faithful creature, but the last act of his life will convince you

1) Das Testament eines Hundes. 2) vom Ertrinken. 3) anhänglich an (acc.). 4) had a m. placed, er ließ ihm auch ein Denkmal errichten. 5) Put the article. 6) repr. him with imp., warf ihm seine Gottlosigkeit vor. 7) to recollect. does not mean here, sich erinnern but sich fassen.

of his extraordinary intelligence; would you believe it, sir, that he made a will, and, among other things, has left⁸ you a hundred pounds, which I now bring you! — Indeed! replied the magistrate, he was a most astonishing dog, and you have done⁹ extremely well in paying honour⁴ to his remains; it would be well, if everybody had lived so as¹⁰ to merit the inscription that is¹¹ seen on his tomb.

8) hat Ihnen .. hinterlassen. 9) you h. d. w. in paying h. etc., Sie haben wohl daran gethan ... Ihre zu erweisen. 10) daß er ... verbiente. 11) die man .. sieht.

44.

Ventriloquy.

Ventriloquy is the art of speaking inwardly without [any] apparent motion of the lips or other organs of speech, and of disguising the voice so as to¹ make it appear that of another person, as if it came from another place.

Some years ago there was in England a man named Hoskins, who possessed this art in a very eminent degree, and by the aid of it frequently amused himself at [the] expense of others. He was once travelling on foot in the country, and overtook on the road a carter driving a cart with a load of hay. After walking some time and conversing with the countryman, Hoskins imitated the crying of a child. As there was not any child to be seen,² the carter appeared surprised, and asked Hoskins if he had not heard it; he replied, Yes, and almost at the same instant the cry was repeated. It appeared this time to come from³ among the hay in the cart, and the ventriloquist insisted that the carter had concealed a child there.

The poor fellow, astonished and alarmed, stopped his horses and unloaded the cart truss⁴ by truss; no child, however, was found, and he reloaded it; but scarcely had he done when the cry was again distinctly heard. The countryman, frightened out of his wits,⁵ immediately

1) so daß man sie als ... erscheinen läßt, und als ob sie ... käme.
2) Use the Infinitive active, see Gram. Less. 44, § 8, Note. 3) from among the hay, aus dem Heu heraus or unter dem Heu hervor.
4) truss by tr., Bündel für Bündel or Bund für Bund. — 5) außer Fassung gebracht.

took to his heels⁶, and running to the nearest village, told the villagers that he had met the devil on the road, and begged them to go and assist him to recover his cart and horses which he had left in his clutches. The peasants immediately set off armed with pitch-forks and flails, and soon arrived in sight of the supposed devil, who having a wooden leg could not run away. After some difficulty, he persuaded them to let him approach and convince them that he was really a human being.

They were [for] a long time incredulous, and the experiments⁷ he made of his art, increased their belief of⁸ his diabolic knowledge. At length, fortunately for Hoskins, the village curate arrived, and explained the matter to⁹ the satisfaction of the peasants, who then agreed to accompany the ventriloquist to the next public house, where he treated them with beer and a lunch. Soon after this, Hoskins was engaged¹⁰ at several of the London theatres, where he exhibited his art to (zu) the astonishment of the multitude, as ventriloquy was at that time almost unknown, particularly in the provinces

6) ergriff die Flucht. 7) Add.: which. 8) an (acc.). 9) zu. 10) engagiert (an), from the French *engager*, a German word being wanting for it.

45.

The Page and the Cherries.

A basket¹ of fine cherries having been sent to ²Frederick, ¹king of Prussia, a time when² that fruit was extremely scarce, he sent them by one of his pages to the queen. The page, tempted by the beauty of the cherries, could not resist tasting some,³ and finding them delicious, devoured the whole, without reflecting on (über) the consequences.

A few days afterwards, ²Frederick ¹asked the queen how she had liked⁴ the cherries. — Cherries? said her Majesty, what⁵ cherries? — Why,⁶ did not Clist, the page, bring you a basket the other day? — No, replied the queen, I have not seen any (feine). — Oh! said his Majesty, I will give the lickerish rogue something more savoury. He ²then ¹went to (in) his room, and wrote the following note to⁷ the officer of the royal guard: “Give

1) ein Körbchen voll. 2) wo or als. 3) einige zu versuchen. 4) wie ihr die Kirschjen geschmeckt hätten. 5) was für K.? 6) Ei! 7) an, acc. . .

the bearer twenty-five lashes, and take his receipt⁸ for them." 3 He 1 then 2 called Clist, and told him to take⁹ the note to the guard-house⁹ and wait for an answer.

The page, however, fearing that all was not right (a guilty conscience needs no accuser), determined to send the note by another hand, and just as he was going out, at the palace door, he met a Jew¹⁰ banker who was well known at court, and asked¹¹ him to carry the note. The Jew, glad of (über) an opportunity of obliging¹² any one at the palace, 2immediately 1set off¹³. On his arrival at the guard-house, the officer read the note, told the messenger to wait, and called out the guard. The Jew, thinking it¹⁴ was to do honour to him, as a messenger from court, begged the officer not to give himself any unnecessary trouble. — I do not, replied he; those ceremonies are quite necessary, as you will find. — He then ordered the guard to seize the Jew, and give him twenty-five lashes, which was immediately done. The Jew, with his honour¹⁵ and his back severely wounded, was going¹⁶ away; but the officer told him he could not let him depart till he had given a written acknowledgment for what¹⁷ he had received. The Jew was obliged to comply, for fear of having another account to settle.

The affair soon reached the ears of the king, who,¹⁸ though he could not help laughing¹⁸ heartily at the adventure, was obliged to confer¹⁹ some favours on the hero of it,²⁰ as the Jews frequently advanced²¹ him considerable sums of money, in cases of necessity.

8) und lassen Sie sich eine Quittung or einen Empfangschein dafür geben. 9) er solle das Briefchen or das Billet auf die Hauptwache tragen. 10) Jew is here adjective, einem jüdischen Banquier or Wechsler. 11) bat. 12) Jemand in dem Palast gefällig zu sein. 13) machte sich auf den Weg. 14) in der Meinung, es geschähe ihm zu Ehren. 15) mit verletztem Ehrgefühl und mit einem blau geschlagenen Rücken. 16) wollte weggehen or war im Begriffe wegzugehen (see Gram. L. 40, II, § 5). 17) Transl.: for that which, für das was. 18) der, obgleich er sich nicht enthalten konnte, über (acc.) zu lachen. 19) to confer on, Einem erweisen. 20) derselben. 21) vorstrecken, irr. v.

46.

The Lounger.

The following story, told of Franklin's mode of treating "loungers", is worth¹ putting into practice occa-

1) Is worth putting, verdient in Anwendung gebracht zu werden.

sionally, even in this age and generation: — One morning, while Franklin was preparing his newspaper for² press, a lounge^r stepped into the store, and spent³ an hour or more in³ looking over the books, etc., and finally, taking one into his hand, asked the shop-boy the⁴ price. "One dollar," was the answer. "One dollar," said the lounge^r, "can't you take less than that?" — "No, indeed, one dollar is the price." "Another hour had nearly passed, when the lounge^r asked: "Is Mr. Franklin at home?" — "Yes, he is in the printing-office." — "I want to see him, said the lounge^r. The shop-boy immediately informed Mr. Franklin that a gentleman was⁵ in the store waiting to see him.

Franklin was soon behind the counter, when the lounge^r, book⁶ in hand, addressed him thus: "Mr. Franklin, what is the lowest you can take for this book?" — "One dollar and a quarter," was the ready answer. "One dollar and a quarter! Why, your young man only asked a dollar." — "True," said Franklin, "and I could have⁷ better afforded to take a dollar then, than to be taken out of the office." The lounge^r looked surprised, and wishing to end a parley⁸ of his own making,⁸ said: — "Come⁹, Mr. Franklin, tell me what is the lowest you can take for it?" — "A dollar and a half," was the reply. "A dollar and a half! Why, you offered it yourself for a dollar and a quarter." — "Yes," said Franklin, "and I had better¹⁰ have taken that price then, than a dollar and a half now." The lounge^r paid the price, and went about¹¹ his business, in case he had any,¹² and Franklin returned into the printing-office.

2) Use the article: die Presse. 3) brachte . . . damit zu, daß er . . . durchblätterte. 4) nach dem Preis. 5) was . . . waiting = waited. 6) mit dem Buch in der Hand. 7) Ich hätte damals lieber nur einen Thaler genommen. 8) eine von ihm selbst veranlaßte Unterredung, — 9) Nun wohl! 10) See Note 7. 11) an (acc.). 12) eines or welches.

47.

Cruelty of King John.

The Jews, since their dispersion, have been frequently treated with cruelty by Christian kings. John¹ of England being much in want¹ of money, and knowing that many of the Jews in his kingdom were very rich, taxed

1) Da Johann v. E. sehr notwendig Geld brauchte.

them very heavily², and threw³ them into prison, to remain⁴ there, till they would pay. Several of them gave all⁵ they possessed; but the king was not satisfied, believing they had yet money concealed: he ²therefore ¹ordered them to be⁶ tortured, until they would acknowledge it.

Some were deprived of an eye⁷, and one in particular, from whom a sum of ten thousand marks was demanded, was treated with yet⁸ greater cruelty. The king ordered that one of his⁹ teeth should be pulled out⁹ every day, till he paid the money. The Jew, not being disposed to reduce himself to poverty, resisted during a whole week, and ²thus ¹lost seven of his teeth; but unable to bear the pain [any] longer, ²he ¹consented on the eighth day, and ²thus ¹preserved¹⁰ the rest of his teeth at the¹¹ expense of his fortune; otherwise he would have soon lost all his teeth. Happily¹² for that people¹² they live now in a less barbarous age. No one need (braucht zu) fear punishment, unless he deserve it.

2) hoch. 3) ließ sie ... werfen. 4) wo sie bleiben mußten. 5) Alles was. 7) them to be t. = daß sie gemartert werden sollten. 7) Put the Gen. case. 8) noch. 9) daß ihm ... ein Zahn ausgezogen werde (see Gram. L. 41. II. 2). 10) behielt den Rest. 11) auf Kosten. 12) zum Glück für dieses Volk (*sing.*).

48.

Real or intrinsic Value.

A lady who had more money than good sense,¹ was very fond,² when she was in the country, of showing² her jewels and other finery, in order to astonish the peasants, and give them an idea of her riches and superiority. One day a miller, who brought flour to the house, expressed his admiration of³ an elegant watch that she wore, and this flattered her pride⁴ so much that she showed him a superb diamond-necklace and bracelets.

The miller, after looking at them for some time with admiration, said: They are very beautiful, and, I dare say,⁵ very dear. — Indeed, they are very dear; how much do you suppose⁶ they cost? — Upon my word,*) I cannot guess, replied he. — Why, they cost more than 20,000

1) good sense Verstand. 2) zeigte sehr gern. 3) über. 4) dative. 5) vermutlich, gewiß. 6) Add: daß: *) *accus.*

francs. — And what is the use⁷ of these stones, madam? — Oh! they are only to wear. — And do they not bring⁸ you anything, madam? — Oh! no. — Then, replied the miller, I prefer the two great stones of my mill; they cost me a thousand francs, and they bring me four hundred francs a year, and, besides that, I am not afraid that any body will steal them. — The lady was shocked⁹ at the vulgarity of his ideas,¹⁰ and the miller was astonished that any one could let¹¹ so much money remain idle¹² in such useless bawbles.¹³

7) der Zweck, Nutzen. 8) 'to bring' means here, einbringen, eintragen. 9) to be shocked at, sich entsetzen über (acc.). 10) Ideen, Gedanken. 11) let remain liegen lassen. 12) müßig. 13) nutzlosere Tand, m. (*sing.*).

49.

A very singular Excuse.

An Irishman, accused of having stolen a gun, was taken, and brought to justice.¹ On the day of trial he was reflecting² on what defence he should make before the judges, when he saw a fellow prisoner return from the court, having been tried³ for stealing a goose. — Well, said the Irishman, how have you come off?⁴ — Oh! replied the other, I am acquitted. — What defence did you make? — Why, I told the judge that I had brought up the goose from the time⁵ it was a gosling, and that I had witnesses to prove it. — Very good, indeed, said Paddy who was at that moment called into court⁶ to take his trial⁷; wait a short time for me, I shall soon be acquitted.

He was then conducted to the bar⁶, the accusation was read, and the judge asked him what he had to say in⁸ his defence. — My lord, replied the Hibernian, I have brought up that gun ever since it was a pistol, and I can bring witnesses to prove it. — The judge, however, and the jury were not sufficiently credulous, and poor⁹ Paddy was condemned to be transported (*pass. v.*).

1) vor Gericht geführt. 2) ... darüber nach, wie er sich ... verteidigen sollte. 3) welcher abgeurteilt worden war, weil er ... (see Gram. L. 45, § 7). — 4) wie sind Sie davon gekommen? 5) Add: wo. — 6) vor Gericht. 7) um gerichtet zu werden. 8) zu. 9) Add the article.

50.

How to catch a Pickpocket.¹

A merchant in London, who used to walk very much in the City, the streets of which are always crowded and infested by pickpockets, was continually losing either his pocket-book, his snuff-box, or his purse, without ever being² able to discover the thief. At last he thought of a very ingenious method, which promised success. He went to a fishing-tackle³ shop and bought some strong fishhooks, which he had sewed⁴ fast in his pocket [with] the points turned downwards, so that any body might put his hand into the pocket, but could not draw it out without being caught.

Thus prepared, he went out as usual to go on change, desiring one of his clerks to follow him at a short distance to be ready, in case he should catch a fish. On passing up⁵ Lombard-street, he felt a slight tug at his coat, and immediately set off⁶ to run, but was prevented by something holding him back. He turned and saw the pickpocket, and said: Why do you hold my coat, sir? let me go, I am in a great hurry. At the same time he attempted to snatch the flap⁷ from him, which drove the fish-hooks further into his hand, and he cried out: Oh! oh! sir, I cannot, you are tearing my hand to pieces; pray let me go. — Ah! ah! said the merchant, I have then caught the fish that has so frequently bitten; you are the pike, or rather the shark.

By this time⁸ the clerk had come up, and a crowd being assembled around them, had a hearty laugh at the fisherman and fish, whose fin⁹ was so firmly hooked, that he was obliged to go with the merchant to a surgeon, and have¹⁰ the flesh cut to¹¹ disengage the hooks. The gentleman was satisfied with the trick, and did not send the pickpocket to¹² prison; but ever after that¹³ he could walk safely through the city, with his pocket-book, purse, or snuff-box.

1) wie man einen Taschendieb fängt. 2) ohne daß er je . . . , konnte. 3) Fischzeug-Laden. 4) nähen ließ. 5) als er die L.straße hinaufging. 6) wollte davon eilen. 7) den Rockflap ihm abzureißen. 8) um diese Zeit. 9) Flossfeder, here Hand. 10) daß Fleisch aufschneiden lassen. 11) um . . . herauszubringen. 12) ins. 13) nachher.

51.

A Singular Precaution.

Two young men¹ set out together on a long journey; one of them was a great spendthrift, but the other being very economical, it was agreed, for their mutual benefit, that the latter should have charge of the purse. The spendthrift soon found himself embarrassed, wishing to buy all the curiosities he saw, and not having money to do so². They slept both in the same room; and one night, after they had been some time in bed, the prodigal called to his friend, saying: William, William! — but William did not answer, till he heard him call very loud, and fearing he might disturb the people of the house, he said: Well, what do you want? — Are you asleep? said the other. — Why? said William. — Because, if you do not sleep, I want to borrow a pound of you. — Oh! I am fast asleep³, he replied and have been [for] some time.

Finding William inexorable, the other frequently got out of bed⁴ in the night, and looked about the room⁵ for his purse, but could never find it. At last they arrived at the end of their journey, which, by the economy of William, had cost but very little; his companion was much pleased, since he knew that, if he had kept the purse, it would have been much more expensive. He then said to William: Tell me, now⁶ that there is no more danger, where you hid the money every night, for I ²frankly ¹confess that I have often endeavoured to find it. — I expected that, said William, and therefore I always waited till you were in bed; and, after putting out the light⁷, I hid the purse in your own pocket, knowing that you would not seek it there, and took care to rise in the morning before you were up⁸.

The young man acknowledged that he was pleased⁹ with the trick his companion had¹⁰ played him; but told him it would, in future, be necessary to find another hiding-place.

1) Leute. 2) = it es. 3) ich schlafe fest. 4) aufstehen. 5) im Zimmer herum. 6) jetzt, da keine Gefahr mehr vorhanden ist. — 7) nachdem ich das Licht ausgelöscht hatte. 8) auf. 9) zufrieden. — 10) had played him = den .. ihm gespielt hatte.

52. Gratitude.

The lieutenant of the police of the caliph Manoun related to one of his friends the following story of an event which happened to himself.

"I was one evening," said he, "with¹ the caliph, when a note was brought which seemed to irritate him very much. After reading it², he said to me: "Go into the next room; you will find a prisoner there keep him in safe custody to-night, interrogate him, and bring him before me to-morrow morning, or answer it³ with your head." — I took the man to my own apartment and asked him his country⁴. — 'I am', replied he, 'of Damascus.' — 'Indeed' said I, 'that town is dear to me, for I owe my life to one of its inhabitants.' — 'Your story,' replied he, 'must be interesting, will you tell it me?' — 'I will,' said I; 'it is as follows.'

"Being once at Damascus, I had the misfortune to displease the caliph, and was pursued by the officers of justice. I escaped out⁵ of a back window, and sought refuge in another part of the town, where a citizen received me with kindness, and, at the⁶ risk of his life, concealed me in his house, till the pursuit was over; then he furnished me with money and a horse, to enable me to join⁷ a caravan that was going to Bagdad, my native city. I shall never forget his kindness, and I hope before my death, to find an opportunity of proving my gratitude."

"That opportunity is at this moment offered to you," said my prisoner. 'I am the person who had the pleasure of rendering you that service.' — He then related to me some circumstances that convinced me⁸ he had been my protector. I asked him by what calamity he had excited the caliph's displeasure. — 'I have had,' replied he, 'the misfortune to offend an officer who has great influence at court, and he, to⁹ revenge himself, has charged¹⁰ me with an intention against the life¹⁰ of the caliph, for which, though innocent, I shall no doubt pay¹¹ with my head.'

1) bei. 2) nachdem er es gelesen hatte. 3) bürgen Sie dafür. 4) nach seiner Heimat. 5) durch ein Hinterfenster. 6) auf Gefahr. 7) zu einer Karawane zu stoßen. 8) Add: that, daß. 9) um sich zu rächen. 10) angeklagt, daß ich dem Kalifen nach dem Leben trachte. 11) büßen.

53.

The same Subject continued.

“‘No, generous friend,’ said I, ‘you shall not be sacrificed; you are at liberty; take this purse, return to your family, and I will answer to the caliph.’ — ‘Do you then,’ said he, ‘think¹ me capable of sacrificing your life, that I have once preserved? No, the only favour that I will accept, is that you will endeavour to convince the caliph of my innocence; if you fail², I will go and offer him my head, for I will not escape and leave you in danger.’

“I went directly to the caliph, who, as soon as he saw me, demanded³ my prisoner and sent for the executioner. — ‘My lord,’ said I, ‘an extraordinary circumstance has happened concerning him.’ — ‘I swear,’ cried he, ‘if you have⁴ let him escape, your head shall pay for it.’ — With great difficulty I persuaded him to listen to me, and I then related how my prisoner had saved my life at Damascus; that I had offered him his liberty, as a proof of my gratitude, and that he would not accept it for fear of exposing me to his (the caliph’s) displeasure. ‘My lord⁵,’ added I, ‘it is improbable that a man of such generous sentiments should be capable of the crime imputed to him; deign⁶ then to demand the proofs of it, before you condemn him.’

“The caliph expressed his admiration of the conduct of my friend; a strict enquiry was made, and he was found innocent; the accuser was beheaded, and my friend appointed to his place; which he filled⁷ with honour till⁸ the day of his death.”

- 1) Halten Sie mich für fähig? 2) wenn es Ihnen mißlingt. —
 3) forderte. 4) haben entkommen lassen (see Gram. Less. 50. II, 2). —
 5) Gnädiger Herr. 6) Geruhen Sie also. 7) bekleidete. 8) bis zu.

54.

Noble Blood. A Lesson for Pride.

A very good king, who loved his subjects, and whose constant care was, to make them happy, and to show that he considered them as his family, had a son whose disposition was so contrary to that of his father, that he despised all those who were beneath him, considering¹

- 1) indem or während er sich für . . . hielt und glaubte, daß . . .

himself a superior creature, and¹ that those whom fortune² had placed under him, were unworthy of his notice, or fit only to be the slaves of his will. Unfortunately his education had been confided to men who had not had sufficient courage to correct his impetuous and haughty temper³, and the good king, his father, saw him arrive at the age of manhood, possessing⁴ a character and opinions which, if ever he came to reign⁵, would change his faithful subjects to (in) enemies, and make his throne a seat of thorns instead of roses.

At length the prince married a foreign princess and became [a] father; and the king, by⁶ the advice of one of his faithful courtiers, thought this a favourable opportunity to give him a lesson on⁷ the nobility of⁸ birth. For this purpose, on the morning after his child was born, another infant of the same age, dressed exactly in the same manner, was placed in the cradle by the side of it.⁹

The prince, on rising, went to see his little son; but what¹⁰ was his surprise on¹¹ finding two children resembling each other so much, that he could not distinguish his own! He called the servants, and finding them equally embarrassed, he gave way to his rage¹², swearing that they should be all discharged, and severely punished.

2) Use the article das. 3) Sinn, *m.*, Gemüthsart, *f.* 4) im Besitz eines Ch. 5) an die Regierung käme. 6) auf den Rat. 7) über (acc). 8) Use the article. 9) neben jenem. 10) wie groß. 11) als er . . fand. 12) ließ er seinem Zorn freien Lauf.

55.

The same Subject continued.

The king, his father, arrived at the same instant, and hearing the complaints of the prince, he said smilingly to him: "How is it possible¹ you should mistake and not recognize your own child? is there any other of such noble blood? can any other child resemble him so as² to deceive you? where then is your natural superiority?"

Then taking the infant prince in his arms, he said: This, my son, is your child, but I should not have been

1) Add.: that, daß Sie sich irren und . . . sollten. 2) so daß es Sie täuscht.

able to distinguish him from the other little innocent, if precautions had not been taken³, by tying a ribbon round his leg: in what then, I ask you again, consists our superiority? It arises⁴ only from good conduct and good fortune.

The prince blushed, owned he was wrong, and promised to entertain more philanthropic sentiments; but the king fearing he might relapse, took⁵ an opportunity of⁶ giving him another⁷ lesson. A short time after, the prince being indisposed, the doctor advised him to be bled⁸, and having to bleed one of the pages on the same day, the king ordered the blood to be preserved in separate bowls. A few hours after, when his son was with him, the king sent for the doctor, and having ordered the two bowls to be brought, desired him to examine the blood, and tell him which was the purest. The doctor, pointing at one of the bowls, said: That is far more pure than the other. — That blood, said the king to his son, was taken from the veins of your page, and is, it appears⁹, more pure than yours, because, no¹⁰ doubt, he lives more simply and more conformably¹¹ to the laws of nature:¹¹ you see then¹² that by¹³ birth all men are equal; they acquire superiority in proportion as they cultivate their minds and render¹⁴ themselves useful to mankind.

3) getroffen. 4) Sie kommt or entsteht. 5) ergriff. — 6) zu; see Gram. Less. 44, § 5). — 7) noch eine. 8) daß er sich zur Ader lassen sollte. 9) wie es scheint. 10) ohne Zweifel. 11) und naturgemäßer. 2) also. 13) von Geburt. 14) machen.

56.

The mysterious Englishmen.

In the year 1767, two Englishmen landed at Calais; they did not go to Dessein's hotel, which was at that time much frequented by their countrymen, but took [up] their lodging at an obscure inn, kept by a man named Dulong. The landlord expected every day that they would set off for Paris; but they made no preparations for¹ departure, and did not even inquire what was worth² seeing at Callais. The only amusement they took was to go out sometimes a shooting.³

1) Use the article. 2) sehenwürdig. 3) a shooting, auf die Jagd.

The landlord began, after a few weeks to wonder⁴ at their stay, and used to gossip, of an evening, with his neighbour, the grocer, upon the subject. Sometimes they decided that they were spies, at other times they were suspected to be⁵ runaways. However, they lived well, and paid so liberally, that it was⁶ at last concluded they were fools. This was confirmed in the opinion of Mr. Dulong, by a proposition which they soon after⁷ made to him.

They called him into their room and said: Landlord, we are very well satisfied with your table and your wine, and, if the lodging suited us, we should probably remain with⁸ you some time longer; but unfortunately all your rooms look⁹ into the street, and the smacking of (*art.*) postilions' whips, and the noise of carriages disturb us very much.

4) refl. v. sich wundern über (acc.). 5) daß sie Flüchtlinge or Ausreißer wären. 6) Use the active with man. 7) nachher. 8) bei Ihnen. 9) gehen auf die Straße, idiomatic expr.

57.

The same Subject continued.

Monsieur Dulong began to feel¹ alarmed and said if it were possible to make any arrangements to render them more comfortable, he would gladly do it. — Well then, said one of them, we have a proposal to make which will be advantageous to you; it will cost some money, it is true, but we will pay half² the expense, and our stay will give you an opportunity of reimbursing³ yourself. — Well, said the landlord, what is it? — Why, said the Englishmen, your garden is very quiet, and if you will run up⁴ a wall in the corner, you can easily make us two rooms, which is all we shall want; the expense will not be great, as the old wall that is there, will form two of the sides, and your house will be worth so⁵ much the more.

Dulong was glad to find so easy a method of preserving such profitable guests: the rooms were constructed, the Englishmen took possession of them, and appeared very comfortable; living in their usual manner to the great satis-

1) to feel alarmed = unruhig zu werden. 2) Translate: the half of the expense (Kosten, pl.). 3) sich wieder bezahlt zu machen. 4) aufführen. 5) um so viel mehr.

faction and profit of the landlord; though he was at a loss⁶ to imagine why they should shut themselves up in such an obscure corner. Thus passed about two months, when one day they told him that they were going on a shooting excursion, and that, as they should be absent perhaps three days, they would take abundance of ammunition. The next morning they set off with their guns on their shoulders, and their shot-bags heavily loaded; the landlord wishing them (a) good sport. They told him that they had left some papers in the apartment, and therefore they took the key with them.

The three days passed, and so⁷ did the fourth, fifth, sixth and seventh, without the return of the strangers. Mr. Dulong became at first uneasy, then suspicious, and, at last, on the eighth day, he sent for the police officers, and the door was broken open in presence of the necessary witnesses. On the table was found the following note.

- 6) to be at a loss = in Verlegenheit sein, nicht recht wissen. —
7) 'so did' must be translated so auch.

58.

The same Subject continued.

"Dear landlord, — You know, without doubt, that your town of Calais was in the possession of the English during two hundred years; that it was at length retaken by the duke of Guise, who treated the English inhabitants as¹ our Edward the third had treated the French; that is, he seized their² goods and drove them out. A short time ago we discovered, among some old family papers, some documents of one of our ancestors, who possessed a house at Calais, where yours now stands. From these documents we learned³ that, on the retaking⁴ of Calais, he was obliged to flee; but in hopes⁵ of being able to return, he buried a very considerable sum of money close to a wall in his garden. The paper contained also such an accurate description of the spot, that we doubted not of being able to discover it. We immediately came to Calais, and finding your house on the spot indicated, we took lodgings in it.

- 1) wie. 2) their goods, ihr Vermögen (*sing.*) 3) erfuhren wir.
4) bei der Wieder-Einnahme von Calais. 5) in der Hoffnung.

"We were soon convinced that the treasure was buried in the corner of your garden, but how dig for⁶ it without being seen? We found a method; it was the construction of the apartment. As soon as it was completed, we dug up the earth and found our object in the chest which we have left you. We wish you success in your house, but advise you to give better wine, and to be more reasonable in your prices."

Poor Dulong was dumb with⁷ astonishment; he looked at his neighbour, the grocer, and then at the empty chest, they both shrugged up⁸ their shoulders, and acknowledged that the Englishmen were not quite such fools as they had taken⁹ [them for].

Judge¹⁰ not the actions of any one, without knowing the motives.

6) wie sollten wir darnach graben? 7) vor. 8) zuckten die Achseln. 9) wie sie geglaubt hatten. 10) Urtheile nicht über (acc.).

59.

The lost Camel.

A dervise was journeying alone in the desert, when two merchants suddenly met him. "You have lost a camel," said he to the merchants. "Indeed, we have," they replied. "Was he not blind in¹ his right eye, and lame in¹ his left leg?" asked the dervise. "He was," replied the merchants. "Had he lost a front² tooth?" said the dervise. "He had," rejoined the merchants. "And was he not loaded with honey on one side, and wheat on the other?" — "Most certainly he was," they replied; "and as you have seen him so lately, and marked him so particular, you can, in all probability, conduct us to him." — "My friends," said the dervise. "I have never seen your camel, nor ever heard of him but from yourselves." — "A pretty story, truly!" said the merchants; but where are the jewels which formed part³ of his cargo?" — "I have neither seen your camel nor your jewels," repeated he dervise. On this, they seized him and forthwith hurried⁴ him before the *cadi*, where, on the strictest search, nothing could be found upon him, nor could any evidence⁵ whatever be adduced to convict him, either of⁶ falsehood or of⁶ theft.

1) an. 2) einen Vorderzahn. 3) Use the article *a*. 4) führten ihn geradezuweg. 5) any ev. what. = durchaus kein Beweis. 6) Use the indefinite article, *Gen*.

They were then about⁷ to proceed against him as a sorcerer, when the dervise, with great calmness, thus addressed the court: "I have been much amused with your surprise, and own, that there has been some ground for your suspicions; but I have lived long, and alone; and I can find ample scope for observation, even in a desert. I knew that I had crossed the trak of a camel that had strayed from its owner, because I saw no mark of [any] human footsteps on the same route; I knew that the animal was blind of one eye, because it had cropped the herbage only on one side of the path, and I perceived that it was lame of one leg, from the faint impression⁸ that particular foot had produced upon the sand; I concluded that the animal had lost a tooth, because wherever it had grazed, a small tuft of herbage was left⁹ uninjured, in the centre of his bite. As to¹⁰ that which formed the burden¹⁰ of the beast, the busy ants informed me that it¹¹ was corn on the one side, and the clustering¹² flies, that it¹¹ was honey on the other."

Goldsmith.

7) im Begriff. 8) add. *wiech*. 9) übrig gelassen. 10) Was die Ladung . . . betrifft. 11) sie or dieselbe. 12) traubenweise aneinanderfliegend.

60.

The Whistle.

A True Story written for his nephew by Dr. Franklin.

When I was a child of seven years old, my friends, on a holiday, filled my pockets with coppers¹. I went directly to² a shop where they³ sold toys for children; and being charmed with⁴ the sound of a whistle, that I saw by the way in the hands of another boy, I voluntarily offered him all my money for one. I ²then ¹came home, and went whistling all over⁵ the house, much pleased with my whistle, but disturbing the whole family. My brothers, and sisters, and cousins understanding the bargain I had made, told me that I had given four times as much for it, as it was worth. This put me in mind⁶ what good things I might have⁷ bought with the rest of the money; and they laughed at me so much for my

1) Kupfermünzen. 2) Ich wollte sogleich in (acc.) . . . L. gehen. 3) man. 4) entzückt von. 5) durch das ganze Haus or im ganzen Hause herum. 6) To put some one in mind, jemand daran erinnern. 7) hätte kaufen können (Gram. Less. 17, Observ. 5).

folly, that I cried with⁸ vexation, and the reflection gave me more chagrin than the whistle gave⁹ me pleasure.

This, however, was afterwards of use [to] me, as the impression continued (blieb) on my mind; so that often when I was tempted to buy some unnecessary thing,¹⁰ I said to myself: *Don't give too much for the whistle*; and so I saved my money.

As I grew up, came into the world, and observed the actions of men, I met [with] many, very many, who gave too much for the whistle.

When¹¹ I saw any one fond¹¹ of popularity, constantly employing¹³ himself in political bustles, neglecting his own affairs, and ruining¹⁴ them by that neglect, I said: *He pays, indeed, too much for the whistle*.

8) vor Ärger. 9) machte. 10) Put: something unnecessary (Gram. Less. 18, Remarks, § 8). — 11) wann. 12) nach Popularität trachtete. 13) indem er sich . . . mißte. 14) vernachlässigte.

61.

The same Subject continued.

If I knew a miser, who gave up every kind¹ of comfortable living, all the pleasures of doing² good to others, all the esteem of his fellow-citizens, and the joys of benevolent friendship, for the sake³ of accumulating wealth: *Poor man*, say I, *you do indeed pay too much for your whistle*.

When I met [with] a man of pleasure⁴, sacrificing every laudable improvement⁵ of the mind, or of his fortune, to mere corporeal sensations:⁶ *Mistaken man*, say I, *you are providing⁷ pain [for] yourself, instead of pleasure; you give too much for your whistle*.

If I see one, fond of fine clothes, fine furniture, fine equipages, all above his fortune, for which he contracts⁸ debts, and ends his career in prison: *Alas*, say I, *he has paid dear, very dear, for his whistle*.

When I see a beautiful, sweet-tempered girl, married to⁹ an ill-natured brute⁹ of a husband: *What a pity¹⁰ it is*, say I, *that she has paid so much for a whistle!*

1) Jede Bequemlichkeit des Lebens. 2) Gutes zu thun. 3) nur um Reichthum zu sammeln. 4) einem Vergnügungssüchtigen, welcher zc. — 5) Ausbildung. 6) sinnliche Genüsse. 7) Sie schaffen sich Qual. 8) macht. 9) mit einem bösen, rohen Ehemann. 10) Wie schade ist es. —

In short, I conceive that a great part of the miseries of mankind were brought upon them by the false estimates they had made of the value of things, and by their giving¹¹ too much for their *whistles*.

11) See Gram. Less. 45, § 7.

62.

Benevolence.

The following anecdote of the Duke of Montagu is very remarkable and laudable. During a walk in Saint-James's Park the duke observed a middle-aged¹ man continually walking to and fro² or sitting in a melancholy attitude on one of the benches. Wishing to know something more of him, the duke approached him several times, and endeavoured to draw him into³ conversation, but without success; his only answers were: "Yes, sir; No, sir; I don't know; I believe so," etc.

Determined to obtain some information⁴ concerning him, the duke ordered one of his servants to follow him home, and to make all the enquiries he could.⁵ The servant, on his return, informed his master that he had learned that the gentleman was a [military] officer with a numerous family; and having nothing but half pay to support them, he had sent them to a distant part of England, where they could live more cheaply than in London; that he transmitted them the greater part of his pay, and lived as he could himself at London, in order to be near the War-office,⁶ where he was soliciting promotion.

The duke, after having obtained further information concerning⁷ the residence of the family, determined to do something for the officer, and to procure him an agreeable surprise.

1) einen Mann von mittlerem Alter. 2) hin und her gehen (Infinitive mood). 3) in ein Gespräch zu ziehen. 4) einige Auskunft über ihn. 5) alle möglichen Nachforschungen. 6) um dem Kriegsministerium nahe zu sein. 7) über.

63.

The same Subject continued.

In a few days, the preparations being complete, he sent one of his servants into the park to¹ tell him that

1) um ihn zu sagen.

his master had something of importance to communicate, and requested that he would call on him.² The astonished officer followed the servant,³ and was introduced to the duke, who then told him that a lady of his acquaintance, and who knew his circumstances and was greatly interested⁴ in his welfare, wished very much to see him; that the lady was⁵ to dine that day at his house, and that he would introduce him to her. The officer had scarcely recovered from his surprise, when dinner⁶ was announced; the duke conducted him to the dining-room, where, ²to his great astonishment, ¹he found his wife and family, who were equally amazed and delighted at⁷ meeting him so unexpectedly.

It appears that the duke had sent a messenger to bring the family to London, without permitting any communication with the husband, and that they had but just⁸ arrived. — After the mutual embraces and felicitations, the duke interrupted them, and, presenting a paper to the officer, said to him: "Sir, I have discovered that you are a worthy man, and that your present means are not sufficient to support your amiable family: promotion⁹ in the army is slow in time of peace; I have a snug¹⁰ little country-house and farm at your service; accept it, go and take possession of it, and may you live happily." At the same time he presented him a paper, in which he acknowledged that he gave¹¹ the house and grounds to Mr. — and his heirs for ever.

2) daß er ihn besuchen möchte (Gram. Less. 49, § 5). — 3) Put the dative. 4) gr. interested in = und welche großen Anteil an seinem Wohlergehen nahm. 5) was to = sollte. Use the article. — 7) mit ihm ... zusammenzutreffen. 8) but just, eben erst. 9) das Vorwürden. 10) ein bescheidenes. 11) schenkte.

64.

Respect of¹ the Bible.

A little boy, a Sunday scholar, was one day sent by his mother to (in) a shop for² some soap. The shopwoman, having weighed it, took a leaf from the Bible that was³ placed on the counter for⁴ waste paper; at which⁵ the boy was greatly astonished, and vehemently exclaimed: "Why, mistress, that is the Bible!" — "Well,

1) vor (dat.). 2) um Seife zu kaufen. 3) was placed = lag. 4) als Makulaturpapier or als Tütenpapier. 5) worüber.

what, if it be⁶?" replied the woman. — "It is the Bible," repeated the boy, "and what are you going to do with it?" — "To wrap up the soap." — "But, Ma'am, you should not tear [up] that book, for it is the Bible!" cried the boy with peculiar emphasis. — "What does that signify? I bought it for waste paper, to use⁷ in the shop."

The little boy, with still increasing⁸ energy, exclaimed: "What, the Bible! I wish it were mine! I would not tear it up like⁹ that." — "Well," said the woman, "if you will pay me what I gave for it, you shall have it." — "Thank you," replied the boy, "I will go home and ask¹⁰ my mother for some money."

Away he went and said: "Mother, mother, please¹¹, give me some money!" — "What for?" said his mother. "To buy a Bible," he replied, "for the woman at the shop was tearing up the Bible, and I told her she should not do so (it); then she said she would sell it to me. O mother, do¹² give me some money to buy it, that it may not be torn [up]!"

6) Gut, was dann, wenn sie es ist? 7) um sie . . . zu verbrauchen. 8) mit steigender Wärme. 9) like that = so. 10) to ask for = bitten um. 11) ich bitte. 12) do = bitte.

65.

The same Subject continued.

His mother said: "I am very sorry, I cannot, my dear boy, I have none." The child cried¹, still² begged for² some money, but in vain. Then, sobbing, he went back to the shop, and said: "My mother is poor, and cannot give me any³ money; but, O Ma'am, don't tear up the Bible, for my teachers have told me that it is the Word of God!" — The woman, perceiving the boy to be⁴ greatly concerned, said: "Well, don't cry, for you shall have the Bible, if you will go and get its weight in waste paper." At⁵ this unexpected, but joyful proposal, the boy dried up his tears saying (and said): "that I will, Ma'am, and I thank you too."

Away he ran to his mother and asked her for⁶ some paper; she gave him all she had; and then he went to

1) To cry = weinen. 2) but noch einmal um . . . 3) not . . . any = kein. 4) translate: that the boy was gr. c. (see Gram. L. 44, § 12). 5) bei. 6) See Note 2.

all his neighbours' houses, and begged for more: and having, as he hoped, collected enough, he hastened with the bundle under his arm to the shop, and, on entering⁷ [it], exclaimed: "Now, Ma'am, I have got⁸ the paper." "Very well," said the woman, "let me weigh it." The paper was put into one scale, and the Bible into the other. The scale turned it⁹ in the boy's favour, and he cried out, with tears of joy in his eyes: "the Bible is mine!" and seizing it, he exclaimed: "I have got it! I have got it!" and away he ran home to his mother, crying out¹⁰, as he went¹⁰: "I have got the Bible! I have got the Bible!"

7) beim Eintreten. 8) bekommen, *Part.* 9) neigte sich zu Gunsten des . . . 10) indem er unterwegs laut ausrief.

66.

The British Empire.

The British Empire, exclusive¹ of its foreign dependencies¹, consists of² the islands [of] Great Britain and Ireland, and of the smaller islands contiguous³ and subordinate to them. Great Britain, the largest and by far the most important of the British Islands, is divided into the kingdoms of⁴ England and Scotland. The former occupies⁵ its southern, most fruitful and extensive, and the latter its northern, more barren and smaller portion. After the withdrawal⁶ of the Romans from Great Britain, these two divisions became separate and independent states, between which the most violent animosities frequently subsisted.

In consequence of the marriage of Margaret, daughter of Henry VII. of England, to⁷ James IV., king of Scotland in 1502, James VI., king of Scotland, ascended the English throne upon the demise⁸ of queen Elizabeth in 1603. But, notwithstanding this union of the crowns, the two kingdoms had distinct and independent legislatures till 1706, when, under the auspices⁹ of queen Anne, a legislative¹⁰ union of England and Scotland was completed¹¹. In many respects, however, the intstitutions

1) seine fremden Besitzungen abgerechnet. 2) auß. 3) welche daran grenzen. 4) See Gram. Less. 39, 4. — 5) to occupy = einnehmen. 6) Abzug, Rückzug. 7) mit Jakob dem Vierten. 8) nach dem Tode. — 9) unter der Leitung viz. Regierung. 10) eine gesetzgebende Vereinigung. 11) vollendet oder zustande gebracht.

of the two countries still continue¹² peculiar. The common law¹³ and the judicial establishments¹⁴ of England differ much from those of Scotland; the prevailing religion and the church¹⁵ establishment of the former are also materially different from those of the latter; and the manners and customs of the two countries, though gradually assimilating¹⁶, still preserve many distinguishing features.

12) sind immer noch eigentümlich or verschieden. 13) das Landrecht. 14) die richterlichen Behörden. 15) die Kirchenverfassung. 16) obgleich sie nach und nach einander ähnlich werden.

67.

The youthful Martyr.

In the third century, a child named Cyril of Caesarea, showed uncommon fortitude. He called on¹ the name of Jesus Christ continually, and neither threats nor blows could restrain him. Many children of his own age persecuted him; and his own father drove² him out of his house, with the applause of many for his zeal in support³ of paganism. He was at length summoned to appear before the judge, who thus addressed him; "My child, I will pardon your faults; your father shall receive you again; it is⁴ in your power to enjoy your father's estate, provided you are wise and regard your own interest."

"I rejoice to bear reproaches⁵," replied Cyril, "God will receive me — I am glad that I am expelled out of our house — I shall have a better mansion — I fear not death, because it will introduce me to better life."

Divine grace⁶ enabled him to witness this good confession. He was ordered⁷ to be bound, and led, as it were⁸, to execution. The judge, hoping that the sight of the fire would overcome his resolution, had given secret orders to bring him back again. Cyril remained inflexible. The humanity of the judge induced him still to continue his remonstrances.

"Your fire and your sword," said the young martyr, "are insignificant — I go to a better house and more

1) Er rief den Namen Jesu Christi . . . an. 2) jagte. 3) daß Heidentum zu unterstützen. 4) es liegt in deiner Macht. 5) Vorwürfe zu leiden. 6) die göttliche Gnade. 7) Man befahl, ihn zu binden — 8) gleichjam or scheinbar.

excellent riches — despatch me presently⁹, that I may enjoy them." — The spectators wept. — "You should rather rejoice¹⁰," continued he, "in conducting¹¹ me to my punishment; you know not what a city I am going¹² to inhabit, nor what is my hope."

He went to his death amidst the admiration of the whole city.

9) lassen Sie mich gleich hinrichten. 10) sich freuen. 11) indem ihr mich ... führt. 12) .. ich im Begriff bin.

68.

A Lesson.

A friend of¹ Dean Swift one day sent him a turbot, as a present, by a servant who had frequently been on similar errands, but who had never received the most trifling² mark of the Dean's generosity. Having gained admission³, he opened the door of the study, abruptly put down the fish, and cried very rudely: "Master has sent you a turbot." — "Young man," said the Dean, rising from his easy-chair, "is that the way (how) you deliver your message? Let me teach you better manners. sit down in my chair, we will change situations, and I will show you how to behave⁴ in future."

The boy sat⁵ down, and the Dean, going to the door, came up to the table with a respectful pace, and making a low bow said: "Sir, my master presents his kind compliments, hopes (that) you are well, and requests your acceptance⁶ of a small present." — "Does he⁷?" replied the boy; "return⁸ him my best thanks⁹, and there's half-a-crown for yourself."

The Dean, thus drawn¹⁰ into an act of generosity, laughed heartily, and gave the boy a crown for his wit.

1) Use the article: des Defans. 2) das geringste. 3) Nachdem er eingelassen war. 4) wie Sie sich künftig benehmen müssen. 5) setzte sich. 6) und bittet Sie, ein kleines Geschenk anzunehmen. 7) Er wirklich! 8) sage or bringe. 9) Dank, sing. m. 10) so zu einem Akt der Freigebigkeit gebracht or genötigt.

69.

Rabelais, a Traitor.

This celebrated wit¹ was once at a great distance from Paris and without money to bear his expenses

1) Witzling, Schöngelst, m.

thither². The ingenious author being thus sharp-set³, got together⁴ a convenient quantity of brickdust, and having disposed⁵ [of] it into several papers, wrote upon one (*acc.*): Poison for Monsieur⁶; upon a second: Poison for the Dauphin; and on a third: Poison for the King. Having made this provision⁷ for the royal family of France, he laid his papers so that his landlord, who was an inquisitive⁸ man and good subject, might get a sight⁹ of them.

The plot succeeded as he desired; the host gave immediately intelligence to the secretary¹⁰ of state. — The secretary presently sent down a special messenger, who brought up the traitor to court, and provided¹¹ him, at the king's expense, with proper accomodations¹² on the road. As soon as he appeared, he was known¹³ to be the celebrated Rabelais, and his powder, upon¹⁴ examination, being found very innocent, the jest was only laughed at¹⁵; for which a less eminent droll would have been sent to the galleys¹⁶.

Spectator.

2) bis dahin. 3) hungrig, in großer Verlegenheit. 4) got together sammelte. 5) verteilte. 6) *Monsieur* was formerly the title given in France to the eldest brother of the king after himself. 7) Vorsehung. 8) neugierig. 9) to get a sight of = sehen, erblicken. 10) dem Staatssekretär or Minister. 11) versah ihn. 12) Bequemlichkeiten. 13) erkannte man, daß es der ber. M. war. 14) nach geschehener Prüfung or Untersuchung. 15) lachte man nur über ... 16) auf die Galceren.

70.

Misery of Inactivity.

The happiness to be derived¹ from retirement¹ from the bustle of the city to² the peaceful scenes of the country,² is more in idea than it often proves³ [to be] in reality. A tradesman in London, who had risen⁴ to wealth from the humble rank of life, resolved to retire⁵ to the country to enjoy, undisturbed, the rest of his life. For this purpose, he purchased an estate and mansion in a sequestered corner⁶ in the country, and took possession of it.

While the alterations and improvements which he directed⁷ to be made, were going on, the noise of hammers, saws, chisels, etc. around him, kept him in good

1) Daß aus der Zurückgezogenheit von ... entspringende Glück. — 2) zu dem stillen Landleben. 3) sich zeigt. 4) sich emporgeschwungen hatte. 5) refl. v. sich zurückziehen. 6) Winkel. 7) welche er machen ließ.

spirits⁸. But when his improvements were finished, and his workmen discharged, the stillness every where disconcerted⁹ him, and he felt¹⁰ quite miserable. He was obliged to have recourse to a smith upon his estate for relief to his mind, and he actually engaged¹¹ to blow¹² the bellows for a certain number of hours in the day. In a short time this ceased to afford the relief he desired; he returned to London, and acted¹³ as a gratuitous¹⁴ assistant to¹⁵ his own clerk, to whom he had given up¹⁶ business.

8) Stimmung. 9) machte ihn mißmutig. 10) refl. v. 11) machte sich verbindlich. 12) zu ziehen. 13) arbeitete. 14) unbezahlt. 15) Put the genitive case. 16) übergeben.

71.

Hazael, King of Syria.

In the days of Joram, king¹ of Israel, flourished the prophet Elisha. His character was so eminent, and his fame so widely spread, that Benhadad, the king of Syria, though an idolater, sent to consult him² concerning the issue of a distemper which threatened his life. The messenger employed on³ this occasion, was Hazael, who appears to have been one of the princes, or chief⁴ men of the Syrian court.

Charged with rich gifts from the king, he presents himself before the prophet, and accosts him in terms of the highest respect. During the conference which they held together, Elisha fixed his eyes steadfastly on the countenance of Hazael, and discerning, by a prophetic spirit, its future tyranny and cruelty, he could⁵ not contain himself from bursting⁵ into a flood of tears.

When Hazael, in surprise, inquired into the cause of this sudden emotion, the prophet plainly informed him of the crimes and barbarities which⁶ he foresaw that he would afterwards commit. The soul of Hazael abhorred, at this time, the thoughts of (an) cruelty. Uncorrupted as yet, by ambition or greatness, his indignation rose at being⁷ thought capable of the savage actions which the prophet had mentioned; and, with much warmth,

1) Put the genitive: Königs von J.; 'king' being the apposition to Joram (see Gram. L. 11, § 11). 2) um ihn über den Ausgang... zu beraten, or um Rat zu fragen. 3) bei. 4) angeführten M. — 5) konnte sich nicht enthalten ... auszubrechen. 6) von denen er vor-
ausah, daß er sie ... 7) darüber, daß man ihn ... fähig hielt.

he replies: "But what! is thy servant a dog, that he should do this great thing?"⁸

Elisha makes no return, but to point out⁹ a remarkable change, which was to take place in his condition: "The Lord hath shown me that thou shalt be king of Syria." In the course of time, all that¹⁰ had been predicted came to pass¹¹. Hazael ascended the throne, and ambition¹² took possession of his heart. "He smote the children of Israel in all their coasts. He oppressed them during all the days of king Jehoahaz;" and, from what¹³ is left on record of his actions, he plainly appears to have proved¹⁴ what the prophet foresaw him to be¹⁵, a man of violence, cruelty, and blood.

Blair.

8) so etwas Großes, Arges. 9) erwidert nichts anderes als um ... anzudeuten. 10) Alles was. 11) erfüllte sich. 12) Use the article. 13) aus dem, was von seinen Thaten erzählt wird. 14) refl. v. sich als das erwiesen zu haben. 15) daß er sein würde, nämlich: —

72.

Desperate Patriotism.

During the wars of Napoleon in Spain, a regiment¹ of the guard of Jerome, ex-king of Westphalia, arrived under the walls of Figueiras.

The general sent a message to the prior to ask if he would prepare [any] refreshments for his officers and men². The prior replied, that the men² would find good quarters in the town, but that he and his monks would entertain³ the general and his staff.

About⁴ an hour afterwards, a plentiful dinner was served, but the general, knowing⁵, by experience, how necessary it was for the French to be on their guard when eating⁶ and drinking with Spaniards, lest they be deceived, invited the prior and two monks to dine with him.

The invitation was accepted in such a manner⁷ as⁸ to lull every suspicion. The monks sat down to table, and ate and drank plentifully with their guests, who after the repast thanked them heartily for their hospitality; upon⁹ which the prior rose and said: Gentlemen, if you have [any] worldly affairs to settle,¹⁰ there is no

1) ein Garde-Regiment. 2) die Soldaten. 3) bewirten. 4) Ungefähr. 5) da der General ... mußte. 6) wenn sie ... aßen. 7) so. 8) daß jeder Verdacht beschwichtigt wurde. 9) Hierauf. 10) zu erledigen.

time to be lost;¹¹ this is the last meal¹² you and I shall take on earth; in an hour we shall know the secrets of the world to come.¹³

The prior and his two monks had put a deadly poison into the wine in which they had pledged¹⁴ the French officers, and notwithstanding the antidotes which were immediately given by the doctors, in less than an hour every man, hosts and guests, had ceased to live.

11) zu verlieren. 12) insert: which. 13) der fünftigen Welt. 14) zugetrunken (*dat.*).

73.

Curious Expedient.

Two Irishmen, blacksmiths by trade,¹ went to Jamaica. Finding soon after their arrival, that they could do nothing without a little money to begin with, but that, with sixty or seventy pounds and industry, they might be able to do² some business, they hit upon³ the following ingenious expedient.

One of them made the other black from head to foot. This being done, he took⁴ him to one of the negro-dealers, who, after viewing and approving his stout athletic appearance, made a bargain to pay eighty pounds for him, and prided⁵ himself on the purchase, supposing him⁶ to be one of the finest negroes on the island. The same evening this newly manufactured negro made off⁷ to his countryman, washed himself clean, and resumed his former appearance. Rewards were in vain offered in hand-bills, pursuit⁸ was eluded, and discovery⁸, by care and caution, was made impossible.

The two Irishmen with the money commenced business and succeeded⁹ so well, that they returned to England with a fortune of several thousand pounds. Previous¹⁰, however, to their departure from the island, they went to the gentleman from whom they had received the money, recalled the circumstance of the negro to his recollection¹¹ and made amends¹² both for principal and interest with thanks (*sing.*).

1) Schmiede von Profession. 2) zu machen. 3) so kamen or versetzten sie auf (Acc.). 4) führte. 5) rühmte sich (Gen.). 6) indem er ihn für . . . hielt. 7) lief davon zu . . . 8) Use the art. 9) und hatten soviel Glück. 10) Jedoch vor. 11) in sein Gedächtnis. 12) erstatteten Kapital und Zinsen.

74.

The Storks.

A tame stork lived quietly in the court-yard of the University of Tübingen, in Suabia, till Count Victor Gravenitz, a student there, shot at¹ a stork's nest adjacent to the college, and probably wounded the stork in it. This happened in autumn, when the stork's begin their migrations. The next spring a stork was observed² on the roof of the college, and by its incessant chattering, seemed to wish³ the tame stork⁴ to understand that it would be glad of its company. But as the wings of the other were clipped, the stranger was induced, with great precaution, to come down first to the upper gallery, the next day somewhat lower, and at last, after much ceremony, quite into the court. The tame stork unconscious⁵ of harm, went to meet him with a cheerful note, when the other fell upon him with the utmost fury.

The spectators drove away the foreign stork, but he came again the next day to the charge⁶, and during the whole summer skirmishes were exchanged between them. M. Gravenitz had desired that the tame stork should not be assisted; thus having⁷ only a single antagonist, and being obliged⁸ to shift for himself, he learned to be on his guard, and made such a defence, that at the end of the campaign the stranger had obtained nothing.

Next spring, however, instead of one stork came four, which immediately attacked the tame stork, who, in the view⁹ of several persons defended himself with great valour, till his strength began to fail, when auxiliaries came to his assistance¹⁰. All the turkeys, geese, ducks, and fowls, that were brought up in the court, probably attached by his mild behaviour, formed a rampart round him, and permitted him a safe retreat. On this¹¹ a stricter¹² look-out was kept against the enemy¹³, till at the beginning of the third spring, about twenty storks alighted in the college and deprived him of life. The only cause for this malevolence was the shot fired

1) nach einem Storchnest schoss. 2) bemerkte man einen Storch ... der durch sein ... zu wünschen schien. 3) dem zahmen Storch begreiflich zu machen. 4) an nichts Böses denkend or nichts Böses ahnend. 5) zum Angriff. 6) da er so nur einen einzigen Gegner hatte. 7) und genötigt war. 8) in Gegenwart. 9) ... ihm zu Hilfe kamen. 10) Hierauf. 11) wurde der St. schärfer beobachtet.

2at 3the 4nest, which¹² they might have supposed to have been¹³ instigated by the tame stork.

12) von dem sie geglaubt haben mochten. 13) daß er ... veranlaßt worden sei (or war).

75.

The Giant and the Dwarf.

Once a Giant and a Dwarf were friends, and kept together. They made a bargain that they would never forsake each other, but go and seek adventures. The first battle they fought¹, was with two Saracens; and the Dwarf, who was very courageous, dealt² one of the champions a most angry blow. It did the Saracen but very little injury, who lifted up his sword, and 2fairly 1struck off the poor Dwarf's arm. He was now in a woful plight; but the Giant, coming to his assistance, in a short time left the two Saracens dead on the plain, and the dwarf cut off the dead man's head out of spite³.

They then travelled on to another adventure. This was against three bloody-minded Satyrs, who were carrying off a damsel in distress. The Dwarf was not quite so fierce now as before; but for all that⁴ struck the first blow, which was returned⁵ by another that knocked out his eye; but the Giant was soon up with them⁶, and had they not fled, would certainly have killed them. They were all very joyful⁷ for this victory, and the damsel who was relieved, fell in love with⁸ the Giant and married him.

They now travelled far, and farther than I can tell, till they met [with] a gang of robbers. The Giant, for the first time, was the foremost now; but the Dwarf was not far behind. The battle was stout⁹ and long. Wherever¹⁰ the Giant came, all fell before him; but the Dwarf had¹¹ like to have been killed¹¹ more than once. At last, the victory declared¹² for the two adventurers; but the Dwarf lost his leg. The Dwarf had now lost an arm, a leg, and an eye, while the Giant was without a single wound; upon which he cried out to his little companion: "My little hero, this is a glorious sport; let us get one victory more, and then we shall have honour for ever."

1) welche sie lieferten. 2) versetzte einem ... 3) Aus Ärger. — 4) dessen ungeachtet. 5) erwidert. 6) mit ihnen fertig, hatte sie ... besiegt. 7) freudevoll über. 8) verliebte sich in. 9) heftig. 10) überall wohin. 11) wäre beinahe getötet worden. 12) refl. v. sich entscheiden.

— "No," cries the Dwarf, who was by¹³ this time grown wiser, "no, I declare off¹⁴, I'll fight no more; for I find, in every battle, that you get all the honour and rewards, but all the blows fall upon me."

Unequal combinations¹⁵ are always disadvantageous to¹⁶ the weaker side; the rich have the pleasure, and the poor the inconveniences that result¹⁷ from them.

13) um diese Zeit. 14) ich erkläre rundweg, daß. 15) Verbindungen. 16) nachtheilig für. 17) die daraus entstehen.

76.

Rotterdam in Winter.

Rotterdam presents¹ a curious and entertaining scene in² frosty weather. The large windows, made of the clearest³ glass, and kept bright⁴ by the constant care of the housewives, sparkle in the sun with more than usual lustre; the fine trees planted along the sides of the streets, are feathered with congealed⁵ snow; innumerable pleasure-boats and merchant-ships lie wedged⁶ together in the canals; their rigging, masts, and pendants⁷ are candied⁸ over in the same manner as the branches of the trees; and multitudes⁹ of men, women, and children, gliding in their sledges with incredible swiftness and dexterity along the streets and canals, render¹⁰ the whole prospect lively and amusing.

Indeed throughout¹¹ Holland, in winter, the whole country wears the appearance of a fair. The canals, from one town to another, are often frozen over for¹² three months together, and form a solid floor of ice. The country-people skate to¹³ market with milk and vegetables. Sometimes a party of twenty or thirty may be seen, going together, young women as well as men, holding each other by the hand, and gliding away¹⁴ with surprising swiftness. Booths are built upon the ice, with large fires in them; and every kind of sport¹⁵ is to be seen on the frozen canals. Sledges drawn by the hand, others by horses, and all gaily decorated, and filled with ladies and children covered with warm furs, fly from one end of the streets to another¹⁶.

1) to present dar'bieten. 2) bei frostigem Wetter. 3) reinsten. — 4) hell. 5) gefroren. 6) zusammengezwängt. 7) Wimpel, *pl.* 8) überzuckert. 9) Scharen von. 10) machen. 11) durch ganz. 12) drei Monate lang. 13) fahren auf Schlittschuhen zum M. 14) to glide away dahingleiten. 15) Unterhaltung. 16) zum andern.

These sledges have no wheels but move on an iron shoe¹⁶ rounded at the ends. The ladies of all the northern countries are extremely fond¹⁷ of riding in 'traineaux' in the winter evenings. These carriages, prettily carved, painted and gilt, are made in the shape of lions, swans, dolphins, peacocks, or any other device, and are fixed on the sledge. The lady on these occasions is gaily dressed in velvet, sables, lace, and jewels, and her head is defended from¹⁸ the cold by a velvet cap turned up with fur; the horse, too, is decorated with feathers and bells, and the horns of a stag are fixed on his head. Several pages on horseback, with flambeaux, attend the carriage to¹⁹ display the equipage and prevent mischief, as they often drive at full speed²⁰ through the streets in the darkest nights; but [it is] by moonlight [that] all this finery, contrasted²¹ with the snow, makes the most beautiful appearance.

16) Lauf, m. 17) are fond of r. in tr. = lieben das Schlittenfahren sehr. 18) ist gegen die Kälte geschützt. 19) um die Ausrüstung zur Schau zu stellen. 20) im Galopp. 21) im Gegensatz zu.

77.

A West Indian¹ Slave.

A negro in² one of the islands of [the] West Indies, who had been brought under the influence of religious instruction, became singularly³ valuable to his owner on account of his integrity, and general good conduct, so that his master raised him to an important situation in the management of his estate. This owner wishing to purchase twenty⁴ additional⁴ slaves, employed him to make the selection, and gave him instructions to choose those who were strong and likely⁵ to make good workmen.

The man went to the slave-market, and commenced his search.⁶ He had not long surveyed the multitudes offered for sale,⁷ before⁸ he fixed his eye intently upon an old and decrepit slave, and told his master that he must⁹ be one. The master seemed greatly surprised, and remonstrated¹⁰ against it. The poor fellow begged

1) adj. westindisch. 2) auf. 3) besonders. 4) noch zwanzig. 5) who were likely to make ... und die voraussichtlich gute Arbeiter abgeben würden. 6) Untersuchung. 7) welche zum Verfaufe ausgestellt wurden. 8) eher; hier als. 9) müßte (see Gram. Less. 43, § 7). 10) translate: and made remonstrances (Gegenvorstellungen).

that he might be indulged;¹¹ when the dealer remarked, that if they bought twenty, he would give them the old man into the bargain.¹²

The purchase was accordingly made, and the slaves were conducted to the plantation of their new master; but upon none did the selector bestow half the attention he did upon the poor old decrepit African. He took him to his own habitation, and laid him upon his own bed; he fed him at his own table, and gave him to drink¹³ out of his own cup; when he was cold,¹⁴ he carried him into the sunshine, and when he was hot,¹⁵ he took him into the shade of the cocoa-nut trees.

Astonished at the attention which this confidential slave bestowed upon a fellow slave, his master interrogated him on the subject. He said: "You could not take so intense an interest in¹⁶ the old man, but for¹⁷ some special reason; — is he a relation of yours,¹⁸ perhaps your father?" — "No, massa,"¹⁹ answered the poor fellow, "he is not my father." — "He is then an elder brother?" — "No, massa, he is not my brother." — "Then he is an uncle, or some other relation." — "No, massa, he is not of my kindred²⁰ at all, nor even my friend." — "Then," asked the master, "on what account²¹ does he excite your interest?" — "He is my enemy, massa," replied the slave; "he sold me to the slave-dealer; and my Bible tells me: "when my enemy hungers, feed him, and when he thirsts, give him drink, for in²² so doing I shall heap coals of fire²³ upon his head."

11) daß ihm seine Bitte gewährt werden möge. 12) to give into the bargain oben drein, in den Kauf geben. 13) ließ ihn ... trinken. 14) wann er fror. 15) wann es ihm heiß war. 16) ein so lebhaftes Interesse an 17) wenn Sie nicht einen besondern Beweggrund dazu hätten. 18) see Gram. L. 41, II, 4. — 9) massa, Neger-Englisch für master. 20) Verwandtschaft. 21) wesswegen or auß welchem Grund? 22) wenn ich daß thue, werde ich ... sammeln. 23) feurige Kohlen.

78.

The Bishop and his Birds.

A worthy bishop, who died lately in a town on the continent, had for [his] arms¹ two fieldfares² with the motto: "Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing?" This strange coat of arms had often excited attention,

1) als Wappen. 2) Krametsvögel.

and many persons had wished to know its origin, as it was generally reported³ that the bishop had chosen it [for] himself, and that it bore reference⁴ to some event in his early life. One day an intimate friend asked⁵ him its meaning, and the bishop related the following story: Fifty or sixty years ago, a little boy resided at⁶ a small village on the banks of the Danube. His parents were very poor, and, as soon as the boy was three or four years old, he was sent into the woods⁷ to pick up sticks⁸ for fuel. When he grew older, his father taught him to pick the juniper berries, and carry them to a neighbouring distiller, who wanted them for⁹ making hollands⁹.

Day by day the poor boy went to his task, and on his way he passed by¹⁰ the open widows of the village school, where he saw the schoolmaster teaching a number of boys of about the same age as himself. He looked¹¹ at these boys with feelings almost of envy, so earnestly did he long¹² to be among them. He was quite aware¹³, it was in vain to ask his father to send him to school, for his parents had no money to pay the schoolmaster; and he often passed the whole day thinking, while he was gathering his juniper berries, what he could possibly do to please the¹⁴ schoolmaster in the hope of getting¹⁵ some lessons.

3) da man allgemein annahm. 4) daß es auf ... (acc.) Bezug hatte. 5) fragte ihn um ... 6) in. 7) Bald (sing.). 8) Reifig zur Feuerung or als Brennmaterial aufzulefen or zu sammeln. 9) um Brantwein daraus zu brennen. 10) ging er an (dat.) ... vorbei. 11) to look at betrachten (acc.) 12) sehnte er sich. 13) er mußte wohl. 14) Use the dative. 15) einige Stunden or einigen Unterricht (sing.) zu bekommen (see Gram. L. 44, III, § 5 and L. 45, § 5).

Continuation.

One day, when he was walking sadly along, he saw two of the boys belonging to¹ the school, trying to set² a bird-trap, and he asked one of them, what it was for³. The boy told him that the schoolmaster was very fond of fieldfares, and that they were setting the trap to⁴ catch some. This delighted⁵ the poor boy, for he recollectet that he had often seen a great number of these birds in the juniper wood, where they came to

1) zu. 2) stellen. 3) Put: for what it was (wäre). 4) um . . zu. 5) dieß freute.

eat the berries; and he had no doubt but⁵ he could catch some.

The (am) next day 2the little boy 1borrowed an old basket of his mother, went to the wood, and had the great delight to catch two fieldfares. He put⁶ them in the basket, and tying an old handkerchief over it, he took⁷ them to (in) the schoolmaster's house. Just as he arrived at the door, he saw the two little boys who had been setting⁸ the trap, and with some alarm⁹ he asked them if they had caught [any] birds. They answered in the negative¹⁰, and the boy, his heart beating¹¹ with joy, was admitted into the schoolmaster's presence. In a few words 2he 1told how he had seen the boys setting¹² the trap, and how he had caught the birds, to bring them as a present to the master.

"A present, my good boy!" cried the schoolmaster, "you do not look as if you could [afford to] make presents. Tell me your price, and I will pay it to you, and thank you besides."

5) but after doubt is translated daß. 6) setzte. 7) trug. 8) welche die Falle gestellt hatten. 9) Angst, f. 10) sie antworteten: nein. — 11) Put: whose heart beat with joy dessen Herz vor Freude klopfte. 12) Use the Infinitive without zu (see Gram. L. 44, § 3).

79.

The same Subject continued.

"I would rather give¹ them to you, Sir," said the boy.

The schoolmaster looked at the boy as he stood before him, with² bare head and feet, and with ragged³ trousers that reached only half-way down⁴ his naked legs. "You are a very singular boy!" said he; "but if you will take no money, you must tell me what I can do for you, as I cannot accept your present without doing something for it in return⁵. Can I do anything for you?"

"Oh! yes," said the boy, trembling with⁶ delight: "you can do for me what I should like better⁷ than anything else."

"What is that?" asked the schoolmaster, smiling.

"Teach me [to]⁹ read," cried the boy, falling on his knees; "o dear, kind Sir, teach me to read."

1) Ich möchte sie Ihnen lieber schenken. 2) bloßköpfig und barfüßig. 3) zerrißenen. 4) über (acc.). 5) als Vergeltung dafür. 6) vor Freude. 7) lieber hätte. 8) als Alles Andere. 9) no zu (see Gram. L. 44, § 3).

The schoolmaster complied. The boy came to him at all his leisure hours, and learnt so rapidly, that the schoolmaster recommended him to a nobleman, who resided in the neighbourhood. This gentleman, who was as noble in mind as in his birth, patronized¹⁰ the poor boy and sent him to school. The boy profited [by] this opportunity, and when he rose¹¹, as¹² he soon did, to wealth and honours, he adopted two fieldfares as [his] arms" (als Wappen).

"What do you mean?"¹³ cried the bishop's friend.

"I mean," returned the bishop, with a smile, "that the poor boy was myself."¹⁴

10) nahm sich des (gen.) . . . an. 11) stieg or gelangte. 12) wie er or was er bald that. 13) Was wollen Sie damit sagen. 14) ich selbst.

80.

A Mystery cleared up.

A few years ago some persons were travelling in a stage-coach towards London, and at the approach¹ of night they began to express their fears of being² attacked by highwaymen. One gentleman said he had ten guineas about him³ and did not know where to hide them for safety. A lady who sat next to him in the coach advised him to conceal them in his boots, which he immediately did. Soon after a highwayman came up⁴ and demanded their purses; the lady told him that she had no money, but that, if he would search that gentleman's boots, he would find ten guineas.

The astonished traveller was obliged to submit⁵ and lost his money, but as soon as the robber was gone, he loaded⁶ the lady with abuse, declaring she was a confederate of the thief. She acknowledged that appearances⁷ were against her, but added that, if the travellers would all do⁸ her the honour to dine with her on the following day, she would explain, to their satisfaction, her conduct, which appeared so mysterious.

They consented, and after partaking⁹ [of] a magnificent dinner, the lady conducted them to the drawing-room, where, showing a pocket-book, she said: Here is

1) beim Einbruch der N. 2) angegriffen zu werden. 3) bei sich. 4) kam heran. 5) refl. verb. sich unterwerfen, sich fügen. 6) überhäufte. 7) der Schein, sing. 8) erweisen. 9) nachdem sie gemeinschaftlich . . . eingenommen hatten.

an apology for my conduct of last night; it contains bank-notes for several hundred pounds. — Then addressing herself to the gentleman: Sir, said she, if I had not directed the highwayman's attention to your ten guineas, I should have lost my bank-notes. I therefore beg that, to make you amends¹⁰ for your loss and vexation, you will accept one of a hundred pounds. No excuses, sir, for I consider¹¹ myself fortunate in saving¹² the others at that price. The travellers were highly pleased with the lady's generosity, and complimented¹³ her on her presence of mind.

10) um Sie . . . zu entschädigen. 11) ich schätze. 12) . . . gerettet zu haben. 13) lobten sie wegen.

81.

Dionysius the Tyrant.

Dionysius, the tyrant of Sicily, showed how far he was from¹ being happy, even whilst he was abounding² in riches and all the pleasures which riches³ can procure. Damocles, one of his flatterers, was complimenting him upon his power, his treasures, and the magnificence of his royal state, and affirmed that no monarch⁴ ever was greater or happier than he. Have you [a] mind, Damocles, says the king to taste this happiness, and know by experience what⁵ my enjoyments are, of which you have so high an idea?

Damocles gladly¹ accepted the offer; upon which⁶ the king ordered that a royal banquet should be prepared, and a gilded conch placed⁷ for him, covered with rich embroidery, and side-boards loaded with gold and silver plate⁸ of immense value. Pages of extraordinary beauty were ordered⁹ to wait¹⁰ on him at table, and to obey his commands¹¹ with the greatest readiness, and the most profound submission. Neither ointments, chaplets of flowers, nor rich perfumes were wanting.¹² The table was loaded with the most exquisite delicacies of every kind.

Damocles fancied himself¹³ amongst the gods. In the midst of all this happiness, he sees, let down¹⁴ from

1) from being happy, vom Glück entfernt. 2) während er überfließ hatte an. 3) Put the article. 4) Translate: never a monarch. 5) welches. 6) Hierauf. 7) hingestellt. 8) g. and s. plate, (daß) Gold- und Silbergeschirr. 9) erhielten Befehl. 10) to wait on him, ihm . . . aufzuwarten or ihn zu bedienen. 11) dative. 12) fehlten. 13) glaubte, er wäre. 14) daß man . . . herabläßt.

the ceiling over his head, a glittering sword hung¹⁵ by a single hair. The sight of destruction thus threatening him, soon put a stop to his joy and revelling. The pomp of his attendants, and the glitter of the carved plate gave¹⁶ him no longer any¹¹ pleasure. He dreads to stretch forth his hand to the table. He throws off the chaplet of roses. He hastens to remove¹⁷ from his dangerous situation, and at last begs the king to restore him to his former humble condition, having no desire to enjoy any longer such a dreadful kind of happiness.

15) welches an einem einzigen Haar hing. 16) machten ihm kein Vergnügen mehr. 17) to remove from, . . . zu verlassen.

82.

Napoleon and the British Sailor.

Whilst the French troops were encamped at Boulogne, public attention was much excited¹ by the daring attempt² at escape made by an English sailor. This person³ having escaped from the dépôt and gained the borders of the sea, the woods near⁴ which served him for concealment, constructed, with no other instrument than a knife, a boat, entirely of⁵ the bark of trees.

When the weather was fair, he climbed up a tree and looked out for the English flag; and having at last observed a British cruiser, he ran to the shore with his boat on his back, and was about⁶ to trust himself in his frail vessel [to] the waves, when he was pursued⁷, arrested, and loaded with chains.

Everybody in the army was anxious⁸ to see the boat, and Napoleon having at length heard of the affair, sent for⁹ the sailor and interrogated¹⁰ him. "You must,"¹¹ said Napoleon, "have had a great desire to see your country again, since you could resolve to trust yourself on the open sea in so frail a bark. I suppose you have left a sweet-heart there?" — "No," said the sailor; "but a poor infirm mother, whom I was anxious¹² to see." — "And you shall see her," said Napoleon, giving at the same time orders to set him at¹³ liberty, and to bestow¹⁴

1) erregt. 2) durch den kühnen Fluchtversuch, welchen . . . 3) Mensch, Mann. 4) wo ein Wald ihm als Versteck diente. 5) aus Baumrinde. 6) im Begriff. 7) verfolgt. 8) begierig. 9) nach. 10) verhörte ihn. 11) see Gram. L. 17, 5, Note. 12) wünschte, verlangte. 13) in. — 14) und ihm . . . zu schenken.

upon him a considerable sum of money for his mother, observing that "she must be a good mother, who had so good a son."

15) indem er bemerkte.

83.

²Avarice ¹punished.

An avaricious merchant in Turkey¹, having lost a purse containing two hundred pieces of gold,² had³ it cried by the public crier⁴, offering ²half its contents to whoever⁵ had found and would restore it. A sailor, who had picked it up, went to the crier and told him it was⁶ in his possession, and that he was ready to restore it on⁷ the proposed conditions; the owner, having thus learned where his purse was, thought he would endeavour to recover it without losing anything.

He ²therefore ¹told the sailor that, if he desired to receive the reward, he must⁸ restore also a valuable emerald which was in the purse. The sailor declared that he had found nothing in the purse except the money, and refused⁹ to give it up¹⁵ without the recompense. The merchant went and complained¹¹ to the cadi, who summoned the sailor to appear, and asked him why he detained the purse he had found? — Because, replied he, the merchant has promised a reward of [a] hundred pieces, which he now refuses to give, under pretence¹² that there was a valuable emerald in it, and I swear by Mahomet that in the purse which I found, there was nothing but gold.

The merchant was then desired¹³ to describe the emerald and to explain how it came¹⁴ into his possession; he did so (es), but in (auf) a manner that convinced the cadi of¹⁵ his dishonesty, and he immediately gave the following judgment: — You have lost a purse containing two hundred pieces of gold, and a valuable emerald; the sailor has found one containing¹⁶ only 200 pieces; therefore it cannot be yours; you must then have¹⁷ yours

1) Use the article; see Gram. L. 12, 1, Note. — 2) Goldstücke. 3) ließ ihn ausrufen or ausschellen, see Gram. L. 40, 4. — 4) der Ausrufer. 5) Jedem, der. 6) er wäre. 7) unter. müßte, see Gram. L. 43, III. § 7. — 8) weigerte sich, refl. v. 9) ihn heraus zu geben. 10) beklagte sich bei. 11) unter dem Vorwand. 12) aufgefodert. 13) gekommen wäre. 14) von. 15) which contains. — 16) lassen, see note 3.

cried again, with a description of the precious stone. — You, said the cadì to the sailor, will keep the purse during forty days without touching its contents, and if, at the expiration¹⁸ of that time, no person shall have justified a claim¹⁹ to it, you may 2justly²⁰ 3consider 1it yours.

18) nach Umlauf. 19) einen Anspruch darauf. 20) mit Recht.

84.

Pœtus and Arria.

In¹ the reign 1of 5Claudius, 2the 3Roman 4emperor, Arria, the wife of Cecinna Pœtus, was an illustrious pattern of magnanimity and conjugal affection.

It happened that her husband and her son were both, at the same time, attacked with (von) a dangerous illness. The son died. He was a youth endowed with every quality of² mind and person which could endear him to his parents. His mother's heart was torn with³ [all the anguish of] grief; yet 2she 1resolved to conceal the distressing event [from] her⁴ husband. She prepared and conducted his funeral so privately, that Pœtus did not know⁵ [of] his death. Whenever she came into her husband's bedchamber, she pretended her son was⁶ better, and as often as he enquired after his health, would⁷ answer that he had⁶ rested well, or had eaten with appetite. When she found that she could not longer retain her grief, and that her tears were gushing out,⁸ she would leave the room, and after having given vent⁹ to her passion, return again with dry eyes, and a serene countenance, as if she had left her sorrow behind her at the door of the chamber.

Camillus Scribonianus, the governor of Dalmatia, having taken¹⁰ up arms against Claudius, Pœtus joined himself to¹¹ his party, and was soon after taken¹² prisoner. and brought to Rome. When the guards were going to put him on board¹³ the ship, Arria besought

1) Unter (dative). 2) des Geistes und Körpers. 3) vonummer. 4) put the dative. 5) erfüllt. 6) Subj. 7) would answer, pflegte sie zu sagen or only sagte sie. 8) zu fließen begannen. 9) nachdem sie ihrem Schmerz freien Lauf gelassen hatte. 10) to take up arms, die Waffen ergreifen. 11) mit seiner Partei. 12) zum Gefangenen gemacht. 13) on board the ship, auf daß Schiff.

them that she¹⁴ might be permitted to go with him. "Certainly," said she, "you cannot refuse a man of consular dignity, as he is, a few attendants to wait upon¹⁵ him; but, if you will take me, I alone will perform¹⁶ their office." This favour, however, was refused; upon which she hired a small fishing vessel, and ²boldly ¹ventured to follow the ship.¹⁷

14) daß es ihr erlaubt würde or daß man ihr erlauben möchte. — 15) um ihn zu bedienen. 16) ihren Dienst verrichten or thun. 17) put the dative.

85.

The same Subject continued.

Returning¹ to Rome, Arria met the wife of Scribonianus in the emperor's palace, who pressed her to discover all that she knew of the insurrection. "What!" said she, "shall I regard thy advice, who² sawst thy husband murdered in thy [very] arms, and yet suvivest him?"

Poetus being condemned to die, Arria formed³ a deliberate resolution to share his fate, and made no secret of⁴ her intention. Thrasea, who had married her daughter, attempting to dissuade her⁵ from her purpose, among other arguments which he used, said to her: "Would you then, if my life were to be taken [from] me, advise your daughter⁶ to die with me?" "Most certainly I would," she replied, if she had lived as long, and in as much harmony with you, as I [have lived] with Poetus."

Persisting in her determination, she found means to provide herself with a dagger; and one day, when she observed a more than usual gloom on the countenance of Poetus, and perceived that death by the hand of the executioner appeared to him more terrible than in the field of glory; perhaps, too, sensible⁷ that it was chiefly for her sake,⁸ that he wished to live, she drew the dagger from her side, and stabbed herself before his eyes. Then, ²instantly ¹plucking the weapon from her breast, she presented it to her husband, saying: "My Poetus, it is not painful."

Pliny.

1) nach R. zurückgekehrt. 2) die du . . . siehst; see Gram. L. 41, I, 1. 3) sagte. 4) aus. 5) ihr von ihrem Vorhaben abzuraten. 6) raten governs the dative. 7) im Gefühl or im Bewußtsein. 8) um ihres willen. 9) mit den Worten.

Origin of the Chimney-Sweepers' Holiday in London.

There was formerly at London, on the first of May of every year, a superb feast given to the chimney-sweepers of the metropolis, at Montagu-House, Cavendish Square, the town residence¹ of the Montagu family. The custom is said² to have taken its origin from the following circumstances:

Lady Montagu, being at her country-seat, as usual in the summer, used to send³ her little boy Edward to walk³ every day with the footman, who had strict orders never to lose⁴ sight of him. One day, however, the servant, meeting an old acquaintance, went into an alehouse to drink, and left the little boy running about by himself.⁵ After staying some time drinking,⁶ the footman came out to look for the child to take him home to dinner, but he could not find him. He wandered about till night,⁷ enquiring at every cottage and at every house, but in vain, no Edward could be found. The poor mother, as may⁸ well be imagined, was in the greatest anxiety about the absence of her dear boy; but it would be impossible to describe her grief and despair, when the footman returned, and told her he did not know what had⁹ become of him. People were sent¹⁰ to seek him in all directions; advertisements were put¹¹ in all the newspapers; bills¹² were stuck up¹² in London, and in most of the great towns of England, offering a considerable reward to any person¹³ who would bring him, or give any news of him. All endeavours were, however, unsuccessful¹⁴, and it was concluded that the poor child had fallen into some pond, or that he had been stolen by gipsies, who would not bring him back for fear of¹⁵ being punished.

1) dem Wohnhaus in der Stadt. 2) soll aus . . . entstanden sein. 3) to send to walk, auf den Spaziergang zu schicken. 4) ihn nie aus den Augen zu verlieren. 5) by himself, allein. 6) beim Trinken. — 7) bis zum Abend. 8) wie man sich leicht denken kann. 9) was aus ihm geworden wäre. 10) ausgesandt. 11) eingerückt. 12) Zettel wurden . . . angeklebt. 13) Jedem, der. 14) fruchtlos. 15) gestraft zu werden.

87.

The same Subject continued.

Lady Montagu passed three long years in this miserable uncertainty; she did not return to London, as usual in the winter, but passed her time in grief and solitude in the country. At length one of her sisters married; and after many refusals, Lady Montagu consented to give a ball and supper on the¹ occasion at her town-house. She arrived in London to superintend the preparations, and while the supper was cooking², the whole house was alarmed by a cry of: *Fire!*

It appears that one of the cooks had overturned a saucepan, and set fire*) to the chimney. The chimney-sweepers were³ sent for, and a little boy was sent up; but the smoke nearly suffocated him, and he fell into the fireplace. Lady Montagu came herself with some vinegar and a smelling-bottle; she began to bathe his temples and his neck, when suddenly she screamed out: Oh! Edward! — and fell senseless on the floor. She soon recovered, and taking the little sweep in her arms, pressed him to her bosom, crying: It is my dear Edward! It is my lost boy!

It appears she had recognized him by⁴ a mark on his neck. The master-chimney-sweeper,⁵ on being asked⁵ where he had obtained the child, said he had bought him about a year before of a gipsy woman, who said he was her son. All that the boy could remember, was that some people had given him fruit, and told him they would take him home to his mamma; but that they took⁶ him a long way upon a donkey, and after keeping him a long while, they told him he must⁷ go and live with the chimney-sweeper who was his father; that they had⁷ beaten him so much, whenever⁸ he spoke of his mamma and of his fine house, that he was almost afraid to think of it. But he said his master, the chimney-sweeper, had⁷ treated him very well.

Lady Montagu rewarded the man handsomely,⁹ and from that time she gave a feast to all the chimney-

1) bei dieser Gelegenheit. 2) zubereitet wurde. *) to set fire to . . . etwas in Brand setzen. 3) Man ließ die Kaminfeger holen. 4) an einem Male. 5) Als der Kaminfegermeister gefragt wurde. 6) führten ihn weit fort. 7) oblique narration in the Subjunctive, see Gram. L. 43, § 7. — 8) so oft. 9) anständig, reichlich.

sweepers of the Metropolis on the first of May, the birthday of little Edward, who always presided at the table, which was covered with the good old English fare¹⁰, roast beef, plum-pudding, and strong beer. This event happened many, many years ago, and Lady Montagu and Edward are both dead; but the first of May is still celebrated as the chimney-sweepers' holiday, and you¹¹ may see them on that day in all parts of London, dressed¹² in ribbons and all sorts of finery,¹³ dancing to music at¹⁴ almost every door, and beating time¹⁵ with the implements of their trade.

10) Kost, f. 11) man kann. 12) geschmückt mit. 13) Putz. — 14) vor. 15) und mit den Werkzeugen . . . den Takt schlugen.

88.

Memory.

When Voltaire resided at the court of Frederick the Great, an English gentleman, it is said,¹ arrived at Berlin; he had so extraordinary a memory, that he could repeat a long composition, without missing² a word, if once recited to him. The king had the curiosity to try him, and the gentleman exceeded all that³ had been said of his powers.⁴

At this time Voltaire informed his Majesty that he had just finished a poem, which with his permission, he would read to him. The king gave his consent, and immediately determined to divert himself at the expense⁵ of the poet. He ordered the Englishman to be placed⁶ behind a screen, and desired him to pay⁷ particular attention to⁷ what Voltaire was about⁸ to read. The author came and read his poem with great emphasis, in hopes of obtaining the king's warm approbation. But to his great astonishment, the monarch seemed perfectly indifferent all the time⁹ he was reading.

When the poem was finished, Voltaire asked his Majesty's opinion about it, and received for¹⁰ answer, that of late he observed that M. Voltaire fathered¹¹ the works of others, and gave¹² them to the world as his own; that he knew this was the case in the present

1) soll . . . angekommen sein. 2) ohne . . . zu fehlen. 3) Alles was. 4) Leistungen. 5) auf Kosten. 6) Er ließ . . . stellen. 7) auf das besonders Acht zu geben, was. 8) im Begriff wäre. 9) die ganze Zeit während. 10) als or zur. 11) sich aneignete, als seine Erzeugnisse herausgebe. 12) Subj.

circumstance, as he had once already heard the same poem, and that he, therefore, could not but¹³ feel greatly displeased at the deception, attempted¹⁴ to be put upon him. The Frenchman was highly astonished, and complained how grievously he was abused, having just the day before ended the poem. "Well then," said the king, "we will put the matter to the proof."¹⁵ On this¹⁶ he called the gentleman forward, and desired him to repeat the verses of which M. Voltaire pretended to be the author.

The Englishman, after a little pause and with great composure, went through the whole poem, without missing a single word. "Now," said the king, "must you not confess that my accusation is just?"

"Heavens!" exclaimed the poet, "what have I done to deserve this wrong? Here must be sorcery employed to rob me of my reputation and to drive me to¹⁷ despair."

The king laughed heartily, on seeing the poet in such a rage, and, having sufficiently sported¹⁸ with his passion, he told him the artifice which had been employed, and liberally rewarded the Englishman for the amusement he¹⁹ had procured him.

13) daß er nur sehr unzufrieden sein könnte über (Acc.). 14) welche man versuchte, ihm aufzudringen. 15) auf die Probe stellen. 16) Hierauf. 17) in Verzweiflung zu bringen. 18) geizert. 19) add: which.

89.

Accident at Prince Schwartzberg's Hotel at Paris.

On¹ the marriage of Napoleon and Marie Louise, prince Schwartzberg gave a splendid festival in honour² of his master, the Emperor of Austria, father of the royal bride. For this purpose he caused³ a sort of hall to be³ constructed, in the garden of his hotel, in the Chausée d'Antin. In the midst of the festival, the curtains took⁴ fire, and in a moment the whole room was⁵ in flames. Napoleon, taking his wife in his arms, retired⁶ with prince Schwartzberg to a short distance. Marie Louise returned to St. Cloud, and Napoleon remained in the garden until morning.

1) Bei. 2) zu Ehren. 3) ließ er . . . erbauen; see Gram. L. 40, III, § 4. — 4) fingen. 5) stand. 6) refl. verb. zog sich . . . zurück.

The building was entirely consumed, and prince Schwartzberg's sister-in-law, who had effected her escape from the hall, being uneasy⁷ about one of her children, had entered again, when, in endeavouring to return by a little door which led to the interior of the hotel, she was suffocated and nearly consumed by the flames. Great concern⁸ and uneasiness was manifested during the night about her fate, when in the morning her remains were discovered among the ruins. Prince Kourakin, the Russian ambassador, was also severely burnt, and about twenty ladies and gentlemen fell victims⁹ to¹⁰ this shocking accident.

All those who in 1771 had witnessed the festivals, given by the city of Paris, on the occasion of the marriage between Louis XVI. and Marie Antoinette, were reminded of¹¹ the catastrophe which took place in the Champs-Élysées and the place Louis XV., where nearly two thousand persons perished, and saw a melancholy omen in the present occasion.

Although Napoleon is said¹² not to have been superstitious, he was much affected by it, and, long after, on the morning before the battle of¹³ Dresden, when he was informed that Prince Schwartzberg had been killed, he said: "He was a brave man, but nevertheless there is something consoling in his death. It was against him, then,¹⁴ that the fatal omen, which occurred at that ball on the wedding-day, was directed. We are clear of it."¹⁵

Two hours afterwards, however, he was informed that Moreau, not Schwartzberg, had been killed.

7) beunruhigt wegen. 8) Sorge. 9) als Opfer. 10) Put the Gen. 11) an das unglückliche Ereignis. 12) See Nr. 88, Note 1. — 13) bei. 14) also. 15) wir sind davor sicher gestellt, wir haben nichts mehr davor zu fürchten.

90.

Ingratitude and Avarice punished.

A gentleman who had acquired a considerable fortune by care and industry in trade, finding himself at an advanced age, became desirous¹ of quitting the bustle of business,² and of passing the remainder of his days in tranquillity. He had a son, newly married, whom he

1) wünschte. 2) der Geschäfte, plur.

had taken into partnership,³ and he now gave up⁴ the whole business and stock⁵ to him. The son and his wife expressed their gratitude for his kindness, and assured him that their greatest attention should be to make him happy.

During some time, the old gentleman found himself very comfortable with⁶ his son⁷ and daughter-in-law and hoped that his worldly cares were over. At length, however, he began to perceive a little inattention, which grew⁷ by degrees into absolute neglect.⁸ Stung by such base ingratitude, he communicated his affliction to one of his old friends, who consoled him by assuring him that he should soon receive the usual attention from his children, if he would follow his advice. "What would you have me⁹ do?" said the old gentleman. — You must lend me 500 L., and it must be done in presence of your son. — Five hundred pounds! I have not so many shillings at¹⁰ my disposal. — "Never mind," replied the friend, "I will furnish¹¹ you, come with me." — He gave him the sum and appointed the next day for the experiment.

He called on him, in the morning about breakfast-time, and told him before his son and daughter that he had an opportunity of making¹² an excellent speculation, but was rather short¹³ of ready money. — "Don't let that be an obstacle," said the old gentleman, "how much do you want?" — "About 500 L.," replied he. — "Oh! if that is all, it is at your service, and twice the sum, if necessary." — The old gentleman went to his desk, counted [out] the money, and told his friend to take his own time for payment. The son and his wife could but ill¹⁴ conceal their astonishment. On finding¹⁵ (as¹⁶ they imagined) that their father had reserved a considerable sum of money, their conduct changed¹⁷, and, from that day to his death, the old gentleman had no reason to complain of (über) want of (an) attention.

3) den er als Teilnehmer or Theilhaber angenommen hatte. 4) to give up = übergeben. 5) Waren-Lager, Grundvermögen. 6) bei. 7) to grow into, sich steigern bis zu. 8) Vernachlässigung. 9) daß ich thue, see Gram. L. 44, § 12. — 10) zu. 11) ich will sie Ihnen leihen. 12) see Gram. L. 44, § 5. — 13) to be short of, Mangel haben an . . . 14) nur schwer or mit Mühe. 15) als sie sahen or fanden. 16) wie sie glaubten. 17) refl. v.

He died some years after, having previously made his will, which he deposited in the hands of his old friend. It is the custom in England, on the day of funeral, to read the will of the deceased in presence of the family.

It was opened and read; the son and daughter listened with great attention and hopeful anxiety. Judge what¹⁸ was their surprise on finding¹⁹ that the only legacy their father had bequeathed them, was a recipe²⁰ how to reward²¹ ungrateful children.

18) wie groß. 19) see Note 15. — 20) ein Rezept. 21) wie man . . . belohnt; see Gram. L. 44, § 13.

Letters.

1.

Returning¹ some Books.

Monday Morning.

Dear Cousin,

I send you the books that you were so good [as] to lend me, and thank you very much for the amusement they have afforded² me. I hope I have not put you to any inconvenience³ by keeping them so long, but I assure you [that] you are at liberty⁴ to do the same with any⁵ of mine, and, to⁶ give you an opportunity, I send you some, which I think will interest you; keep them as long as you please.⁷

Adieu, my dear; remember me⁸ to my aunt.

Yours ever truly

J. B.

1) Bei der Rückgabe. 2) gewährt. 3) ich habe Sie in keine Verlegenheit gebracht. 4) es steht Ihnen frei. 5) mit jedem der meinigen. 6) see Gram. L. 44, § 10. — 7) wollen. 8) empfehlen Sie mich.

2.

From an Uncle to his Nephew.

London, May 6th, 1865.

My dear Nephew,

Having heard that you are very attentive¹ to your studies, and that you are making great progress², I send you a trifling present, as a reward for your perseverance. It is a set³ of Chesterfield's letters elegantly bound; but [it is] not to⁴ the binding I wish to draw⁵ your attention; the contents⁶ of the book, my dear nephew, are⁷ what I strongly recommend to your notice.³

Read, study, and put in practice⁹ the precepts you will there find, and you will become a good man, an ornament of society, and a pattern for mankind to follow.¹⁰ I present you the book in the full reliance that you will profit by it, and that you will receive it as an additional¹¹ proof that I am ever

Your affectionate¹² uncle.

1) fleißig in (Dat.). 2) Fortschritte, pl. 3) Sammlung von. — 4) auf (Acc.) 5) lenken, richten. 6) der Inhalt, sing. 7) ist es. — 8) Aufmerksamkeit. 9) . . bringen Sie in Ausübung. 10) to follow = nachahmungswert. 11) einen weiteren B. 12) Ihr Sie liebender.

3.

Answer.

Cambridge, May 10th, 1865.

My very dear Uncle,

Believe me, I feel¹ highly flattered and honoured by your kind attention, and I am delighted² with the valuable present you have sent me.

I am happy to have merited your esteem, and will endeavour to convince you how desirous¹ I am to follow your advice by⁴ attentively perusing and scrupulously adhering to the valuable precepts which Lord Chesterfield has bequeathed to the British youth.

Adieu, my dear uncle, accept my grateful thanks⁵ and believe me⁶

your affectionate nephew

Charles R.

1) refl. ich fühle mich. 2) entzückt von. 3) I am desirous; ich wünsche sehr. 4) dadurch, daß ich. 5) Dank; m. sing. 6) believe me is translated in German: Ich verbleibe.

4.

Dear Sir,

A young friend of mine,¹ Mr. Williams is going to London for a year, to perfect himself in² drawing and painting, for which he has great talents. I think he will prove³ a very pleasant acquisition⁴ to⁵ the circle of your acquaintance, as he is a young man of good information⁶ and agreeable manners. He is quite a stranger⁷ in London, and should there be⁸ any opening for the lucrative exercise of his art, you will much oblige me by forwarding⁹ his views; for although highly respectable in his connections and family, some late¹⁰ misfortunes, which have overtaken¹¹ them, compel him to rely on the productions of his pencil, as a means of subsistence.¹² I have given him a letter to you, which he will deliver on¹³ arrival, and I do not doubt that any¹⁴ favour shown him, will be amply justified, not only by his merits in his profession, but also by the pleasure to be derived¹⁵ from his acquaintance.

I remain dear Sir,

your obliged¹⁶ and sincere friend

Matthew Smith.

1) see Gram. L. 41, II, 4. — 2) im. 3) to prove = sich erweisen als. 4) Zuwachs, m. 5) zu. 6) Bildung. 7) a stranger = fremd not declined. 8) wenn sich eine Gelegenheit zeigen sollte. — 9) wenn Sie . . . befördern. 10) einige neulich vorgekommene Unglücksfälle. 11) betroffen. 12) Unterhalt, m. 12) bei seiner Ankunft. 14) jede. 15) welches seine Bekanntschaft gewähren wird. 16) dankbar.

5.

Paris.

Dear Richard,

In consequence¹ of the dulness of everything¹ here, and of some severe losses that my father has lately experienced, I have determined to seek a situation and to endeavour² to provide for myself. Knowing you are so much in the world at London, I thought it probable that you might hear of³ something to suit⁴ me. I will tell you my idea of⁵ the subject.

You know that I have always kept⁶ my father's books, by which means I have acquired much useful

1) In Folge der allgemeinen Traurigkeit. 2) to endeavour = sich bemühen, refl. v. 3) von. 4) welches für mich paßt. 5) Ansicht über (Acc.). 6) geführt.

knowledge.⁷ I have also studied English during two years and made considerable progress.⁷ Now, if it were possible to obtain a situation in an English counting-house, I would willingly give⁸ my services during the first twelvemonths, in consideration⁹ of my board. I should, of course, prefer a house that has French correspondence¹⁰, as I should be able to undertake¹¹ that branch entirely.

I have not mentioned my intention to my father, because I know he would wish to keep me at home, but he has a large family to support, and I wish to lighten his burden; besides, my brother William is now capable of taking¹² my place. When you write, address to¹³ me at the post-office¹⁴, as I shall not communicate it to my father, till I have procured¹⁵ something.

Yours sincerely¹⁷

Charles Olivier.

7) Use the plural. 8) bieten or leisten. 9) für or gegen Kost und Wohnung. 10) Korrespondenz, f. 11) besorgen. 12) einzunehmen. 13) an mich. 14) Postlagernd. 15) erlangt or erreicht. 16) Ihr aufrichtiger.

6.

Dear Father,

The fear of offending you, and the hope that things¹ would mend,² have hitherto prevented me from addressing³ you on the subject of my situation at Mr. C—'s. I have now been⁴ two years with him⁵, and I am sorry to say, without much benefit. It is true, I am treated very well, as far as regards living,⁶ but I am convinced that I shall never learn my trade⁷ sufficiently well to be able to obtain a more lucrative situation. Mr. C— is frequently out of town⁸ during a fortnight, leaving the business under the direction of his son, who knows very little more of it than I [do].

I think therefore, dear father, it is a pity to waste my time, and should be much obliged, if you would take an opportunity of speaking to Mr. C— on⁹ the subject. I have no doubt but¹⁰ a situation might be found which would prove move advantageous in many respects; but

1) die Verhältnisse. 2) refl. v. sich bessern. 3) Put the Inf. with zu = mich an Sie zu wenden. 4) Use the present tense; see Gram. L. 42, I, 4. — 5) bei. 6) soweit als es die Kost or den Unterhalt betrifft. 7) Geschäft, n. 8) auswärts. 9) über. 10) daß.

I would avoid, if possible, giving¹¹ offence to my employer. I leave the whole, however, to your judgment and decision, being fully convinced that, whatever you do will be for my good.¹² Adieu, dear father, believe me

your obedient and affectionate son

Joseph Wilson.

11) meinem Prinzipal Anstoß zu geben. 12) mein Bestes.

7.

Information on going¹ to London.

Lyons, June 3d, 1862.

Dear Sir,

An opportunity of going to London has just presented itself to me. As you have been there several times and are, no doubt, acquainted with the different modes² of travelling and of living there, I will thank³ you for a little advice on these subjects.

I intend to be as economical as possible, but, at the same time, to see all I can. I shall stay perhaps six weeks or two months, and should like to know in what part of the town it would be most convenient for me to lodge. I hear that there are many furnished rooms in Leicester Square and Covent Garden; tell me what you think of them. Perhaps you could also give me an idea how much the journey would cost me, and whether I had⁴ better procure English money before my departure. I should like also to take a few trifling⁵ presents for some friends to⁶ whom I am recommended. I intend to set off in about a week, and will thank you³ for an answer as⁷ soon as convenient.⁷

I am yours.

P. S.⁸ If I can execute⁹ any commissions for you, you have only to command [me].

1) Auskunft über die Reise nach London. 2) Arten, pl. 3) ich werde Ihnen dankbar sein. 4) ob ich mir lieber . . . verschaffen sollte. 5) kleine or unbedeutende. 6) an with the acc. 7) baldgefällige. — 8) Nachschrift. 9) besorgen.

8.

Answer.

Lyons, June 4th, 1862.

My dear Friend,

I am very happy to be¹ able to be of service¹ to you.

1) Ihnen dienen zu können.

and I flatter myself (*dat.*) you could not apply to any one more capable of giving you the necessary information.

In the first place I advise you to go by the mail to Calais, and then by the steam-packet directly to London. It is the best method for several reasons: first it is the cheapest, next² you avoid the unpleasant examination of your trunks at Dover by the custom-house officers; it is true they will be examined on your arrival at London, but it will not give³ you so much trouble. Another reason why I recommend you to go directly to London, is the beautiful scenery you will view on each side of that magnificent river (the Thames), which you will ascend⁴ sixty miles. On your arrival at London, I advise you to take a lodging in a private house where you can board with the family; it will give you an opportunity of perfecting⁵ yourself in the language. With respect⁶ to money the best method is to procure a letter of credit; and for your presents, if they are for ladies, you can offer nothing more acceptable than lace or gloves.

If you wish any further information, take⁷ the trouble to call on me before your departure, and I shall give you all I can.

Yours truly.

P. S. I open my letter to say⁸ I have just seen a friend who is on the point of going to London, and will be very happy to accompany you; he cannot, however, fix a day for his departure, as he awaits the arrival of letters from Bordeaux.

If your business is not very pressing, I think you would do well⁹ to wait for¹⁰ him; you would find his company very valuable, as he not only speaks English with great facility, but is also acquainted with London and with several families of distinction.¹¹

He dines with me to-morrow; if you can do the same, you will have an opportunity of (*zu*) making his acquaintance; if not, let me hear from you as soon as possible.

2) sodann. 3) machen. 4) auf welchem Sie 60 Meilen aufwärts fahren werden. 5) sich . . . zu vervollkommen. 6) in Beziehung auf das Geld. 7) geben Sie sich die Mühe or bemühen Sie sich. 8) um beizufügen. 9) Sie würden wohl daran thun. 10) auf (*Acc.*). — 11) angesehenen Familien.

9.

Madam,

I am extremely sorry to be under¹ the necessity of giving you unpleasant and afflicting news concerning your son William. He took a cold² about³ a fortnight ago³, and in spite of every attention, it has increased⁴ and brought on a violent fever, under which he is now suffering severely.⁵ He has the best medical advice that can be procured; but I am sorry to say he grows daily worse, and the physician has this morning declared him⁶ to be in a dangerous state. Do not, my dear Madam, be displeased⁷ that I did not inform you sooner. I hoped it would have passed away, and that he would have recovered, before you knew that he had been ill. My hopes are, however, disappointed, and I am compelled to give you the distressing intelligence.

I beg⁸ to assure you that nothing has been neglected, and that he is treated as if he were my own son. He wishes very much to see you, and says he has something to communicate. If you can come, we shall accommodate⁹ you with a room, as long as you please¹⁰ to stay.

The doctor has this moment paid¹¹ another visit and says he observes a favourable change since this morning. If my hopes had not been so often deceived, I would not send this; my anxiety, however, prompts¹² me not to delay any longer.¹³ I earnestly hope that you may find him much better on your arrival. Believe¹⁴ me, Madam,

yours respectfully

John Britchard.

1) in. 2) To take a cold = sich erkälten, refl. v. 3) ungefähr vor 14 T. 4) es hat sich verschlimmert. 5) schwer. 6) him to be = that he is; see Gram. L. 44, V, § 12. — 7) Nehmen Sie es mir nicht übel. — 8) ich erlaube mir. 9) werden wir Ihnen ein Zimmer einräumen. — 10) als es Ihnen gefällt. 11) noch or wieder einen Besuch gemacht. 12) treibt mich. 13) not . . . any longer, nicht länger. 14) Ich verbleibe.

10.

On a Journey to Marseilles.

Marseilles, May 10th, 1865.

My dear Sister,

When I last¹ wrote to you, I was on the point of setting off for (nach) Marseilles, where I arrived the day

1) adv. zuletzt.

before yesterday. I did not find the journey so agreeable as that from Paris to Lyons. The roads are excessively dusty, and the country rocky and mountainous; the weather, however, is very fine, though somewhat² hot.

I have already paid several visits, and seen a great part of the town, which I like³ very much, particularly that called the New Town; the streets are very clean and well paved; the principal one is elegant, and leads directly to (an *acc.*) the port, which is very capacious, and frequented by ships of all nations.

You will perhaps ask how I can be so well acquainted with these things, after a residence of two days; I will tell you. Our excellent friend, Mr. H., has been kind enough to conduct me about⁴ the town, and to describe every thing⁵ worthy of notice;⁵ he has also invited me to dine with his family, at his country-house, on Sunday next.

You do not say, in your last, whether you have received a little parcel I sent you from Lyons; do not fail¹ to let me know it in your next. If I continue⁷ to like Marseilles, I shall stay some time; therefore your next letter will, in all⁸ probability, find me at Nr. 45, rue Beauveau. Pray send me all the news you can, and present⁹ my kind remembrances¹⁰ [to] our dear friends. Farewell, dear Anna; accept the best wishes of

Your affectionate sister.

2) ein wenig. 3) welche mir sehr wohl gefällt. 4) in der Stadt herum zu führen. 5) alles Sehenswürdiges. 6) verfehlen, ermangeln. 7) Wenn es mir ferner in M. gefällt. 8) höchst wahrscheinlich. — 9) ausrichten. 10) meine freundlichen Grüße or Empfehlungen.

11.

From Lord Byron to his Mother.

Constantinople, May 18th, 1810.

Dear Madam,

I arrived here in an English frigate from Smyrna a few days ago, without any events worth¹ mentioning, except landing² to view the plains of Troy, and afterwards, when we were at anchor³ in the Dardanelles, swimming⁴ from Sestos to Abydos, in imitation⁵ of

1) Erwähnenswerth. 2) ausgenommen, daß wir landeten, um . . . 3) vor Anker. 4) daß ich . . . schwamm. 5) um . . . nachzuahmen.

Monsieur Leander, whose story you no doubt know too well for⁶ me to add any thing⁶ on the subject, except that I crossed⁷ the Hellespont without having so good a motive for the undertaking. As I am just going to visit the Captain-Pacha. you will excuse the brevity of my letter.

When Mr. Adair takes leave, I am to see the Sultan and the mosques, etc.

Believe me yours ever.

Byron.

6) als daß ich etwas darüber beifügen müßte. 6) to cross = schwimmen über (*acc.*).

12.

Mr. Sterne to Mr. Panchard.

Turin, November 15th, 1865.

Dear Sir,

After many difficulties I have got¹ here safe² and sound, though I spent eight days in passing³ the mountains of Savoy. I am stopped⁴ here for ten days, the whole country betwixt here and Milan being⁵ laid under water⁵ by continued rains; but I am very happy, and have found my way into a dozen houses already. Tomorrow I am to be presented to the king; and when the ceremony is over, I shall have my hands full of engagements.⁶ There are no English here but Sir James Macdonald, who meets⁷ with much respect and Mr. Ogilby. We are all together, and shall depart in peace together. My kind regards⁸ to all. Pray forward the enclosed.

Yours must truly,⁹

L. Sterne.

1) bin ich . . . angekommen. 2) wohlbehalten. 3) zu passieren. — 4) aufgehalten. 5) da die ganze Gegend . . . unter Wasser steht. 6) Einladungen. 7) findet, genießt. 8) Grüße an. 9) Ihr ergebenster.

13.

Honoured Sir,

After the many occasions¹ I have given you for² displeasure, permit me to ask your advice in an affair which may render my life comfortable or miserable. You know, Sir, to what low ebb my folly and extravagance have reduced³ me. Your generous indulgence

1) Veranlassungen, welche. 2) zum. 3) gebracht.

has made you stretch your kindness, to my shame I say it, even beyond⁵ the bounds which wisdom⁶ and a necessary regard to⁷ the rest of your family would permit; therefore I cannot hope for⁷ further assistance from you. Something⁸, however, I must resolve upon, to gain a maintenance, and with this view, I cannot but⁹ rejoice at (über, *acc.*) the offer that was made me yesterday by Mr. Rich, manager of one of our theatres. He happened¹⁰ to dine at my uncle's, when I was there. After dinner, the subject of discourse was the art of an actor, on which my uncle took occasion to mention the little flights¹¹ in that way, with which I have diverted myself in my gayer moments, and partly compelled me to give an instance¹² of my abilities. Mr. Rich was pleased to declare his approbation of my manner¹³ and voice, and, on being¹⁴ told my circumstances, offered at once to engage me, with an allowance sufficient for present subsistence, and additional encouragement, if I should be found to deserve it. Half a benefit¹⁵ he promised me in the first season, which by my numerous acquaintances, might, I believe, be turned¹⁶ to pretty good account.¹⁶ I am not fond of this life; but I see no other means of supporting myself like a gentleman.¹⁷ Your speedy answer, honoured Sir, will be ever gratefully acknowledged by

your dutiful though unhappy son

David Garrick.

4) hat Sie veranlaßt. 5) über (*Acc.*). 6) die Klugheit. 7) auf (*Acc.*). 8) Zu etwas muß ich mich jedoch entschließen, um . . . 9) I cannot but, kann ich mich nur . . . 10) Er speiste zufällig. 11) Anläufe or Versuche. 12) eine Probe. 13) Haltung, 14) als man ihm meine Umstände erzählte. 15) eine halbe Benefizvorstellung. 16) ziemlich gut ausfallen dürfte. 17) like a g. = anständig.

14.

Mary Stuart to Queen Elizabeth.

Madam,

I am undeceived¹, Madam, I relied on your clemency and generosity. Why will you not see me? Why, instead of offering me a palace, do you throw me into a prison? Why have I incurred² your hatred rather than your

1) enttäuscht or aus meinem Irrtum gerissen. 2) to incur = sich (dat.) zuschieben.

friendship? By³ what right does your council and your parliament condemn me to a prison and (to) chains? Do you persecute me, Madam, because my faith differs⁴ from yours, and that we are not daughters of the same church? Is that a political reason why I must support your injustice? However, Madam, if you have no regard for my rank and misfortune, condescend⁵ at least to have a little consideration⁶ for my situation You wish to terrify me, I know it and I know why! Know therefore that I fear nothing. Elizabeth does not yet know Mary Stuart's greatness of soul. I will be silent then under⁷ affliction, because I have, to console me, one who giveth, and who taketh away empires, who establishes, and who overthrows thrones. Reign, Elizabeth, reign in peace and glory, but remember⁸ to govern with justice and humanity.

3) mit welchem Recht. 4) to differ, verschieden sein. 5) geruhen Sie. 6) Rücksicht auf (*acc.*). 7) unter der Trübsal. 8) Vergessen Sie nicht.

15.

My dear Son,

A bill for¹ ninety pounds sterling was brought [to] me the other day, said² to be drawn upon me by you. I scrupled paying it at first, not on account of the sum, but because you had sent me no letter of advice,³ which is always done in those transactions;⁴ and still more because I did not perceive that you had signed it. The person who presented it, desired me to look again, and said that I should discover your name at the bottom. Accordingly I looked again, and with the help of my magnifying-glass, I perceived that what⁵ I had first taken only for somebody's mark, was, in truth, your name, written in the worst and smallest hand⁶ I ever saw in my life. I cannot write quite so ill, but it was something like this: *Philip Stanhope*.

However, I paid the bill at a venture,⁷ though I would almost rather lose the money than that such a signature should be yours. If you were to write in such a character⁸ to the secretary's office,⁸ your letter would imme-

1) von. 2) welcher angeblich . . . gezogen sein sollte. 3) Meines Brief. 4) Geschäften. 5) das was. 6) Handschrift or simply Schrift, f. 7) aufs Geratewohl. 8) an das Ministerium.

diately be sent to the decypherer, as⁹ containing matters of the utmost secrecy, not fit¹⁰ to be trusted¹¹ to the common character;⁶ whereas an antiquarian would certainly try it by (mit) the Runic, Celtic or Slavonian alphabet, never suspecting it to be¹² a modern character, I have often told you that every man, who has the use of his eyes and of his hand, can write whatever hand⁶ he pleases.

You will perhaps say that, when you write so very ill, it is because you are in a hurry; to which I answer: — “Why are you ever in a hurry?” I own your time is much taken up¹³, and you have a great many different things to do; but remember that you had much better¹⁴ do half of them well, and leave the other half undone, than do them all indifferently. I hope, you won't let me see such a bad hand again, in which expectation I remain.

yours affectionately

Chesterfield.

9) wie wenn er . . . enthielte. 10) die sich nicht eignen. 11) anvertraut. 12) see Gram. L. 44, § 12. — 13) in Anspruch genommen. 14) daß Sie besser daran thun würden.

16.

Dear Cousin,

I am just setting out for Wells and have not time to say so much as I would on¹ the occasion upon which² I now write to you. I hear that Mr. Dandy and you have lately contracted³ such an intimacy, that you are hardly⁴ ever asunder, and as I know his morals⁵ are not the best, nor his circumstances⁶ the most happy, I fear he will, if he has not already done it, let you see⁷ that he better knows what he does in seeking your acquaintance, than you [do], in cultivating his.

I am far⁸ from desiring⁸ to abridge you in any necessary or innocent liberty, or to prescribe too much to your choice of a friend; nor⁹ am I against your being complaisant to strangers; for this gentleman's acquaintance is not yet a month old with you; but you must not think that every man, whose conversation is agree-

1) über den Anlaß. 2) worüber. 3) geschlossen. 4) hardly ever = fast nie. 5) seine Moral, sing. f. 6) Verhältnisse. 7) einsehen. — 8) weit entfernt von dem Wunsch. 9) auch ich bin nicht dagegen, daß.

able, is fit¹⁰ to be immediately treated as a friend. Of all sorts of friendship, hastily contracted ones promise the least duration or satisfaction, as they commonly arise from design on one side, and weakness on the other. True friendship must be the effect of long and mutual esteem and knowledge. It ought to have for its cement an equality of years, a similitude of manners and pretty much a parity in circumstances⁷ and degree (Rang).

But, generally speaking,¹¹ an openness to a stranger carries with it strong marks of indiscretion, and seldom ends in repentance. For¹² these reasons, I recommend you to be upon your guard and proceed cautiously in this new alliance. Mr. Dandy has vivacity and humor enough to please any man of a light turn,¹³ but were I¹⁴ to give my judgment of him, I should pronounce¹⁵ him fitter for the tea-table than the cabinet. He is smart, but very superficial, and treats all serious subjects with a contempt too natural to bad minds; and I know more young men than one, of whose good opinion he has taken¹⁶ advantage, and has made them wiser, though at their own expense, than he found them.

The caution¹⁷ I here give you, is the pure effect of my experience in life, some knowledge of your new associate,¹⁸ and my affection for you. The use you make of it¹⁹ will determine, whether you merit this concern²⁰ from
your affectionate kinsman

Harry Chester.

10) geeignet. 11) im allgemeinen gesprochen. 12) aus. 13) jedem leichtsinnigen Menschen. 14) hätte ich. 15) erklären. 16) gezogen. — 17) die Warnung. 18) Kamerad, 2nd decl. 19) davon. 20) Teilnahme, f.

17.

Dr. Johnson to Mr. Elphinstone.

July 27th, 1778.

Dear Sir,

Having myself suffered what you are now suffering, I well know the weight of your distress, how much need¹ you have of comfort, and how little comfort can be given. A loss such as yours lacerates the mind, and breaks the whole system of purposes and hopes. It leaves a dismal vacuity in life, which affords nothing on which

1) wie sehr Sie Trost nötig haben oder bedürfen.

the affections can fix, or to which² endeavour² may be directed. All this I have known, and it is now, in³ the vicissitude of things, your turn³ to know it. But in the condition of mortal beings one must lose one another.⁴ What⁵ would be the wretchedness of life, if there was not always something in view,⁶ some Being⁷ immutable and unfailing, to whose mercy man must have recourse!⁸

Here we must rest. The greatest Being is the most benevolent. "We must not grieve⁹ for the dead, as¹⁰ men without hope," because we know that they are in His hand. We have not indeed leisure to grieve⁹ long, because we are hastening to follow them. Your race¹¹ and mine have been interrupted by many obstacles, but we must humbly hope for¹² a happy end.

I am, Sir, etc.

2) worauf die Bestrebungen, f. 3) nach dem Lauf (mit dem Wechsel) der Dinge an Ihnen die Reihe. 4) einander. 5) Wie groß. 6) in Aussicht. 7) ein Wesen, n. 8) seine Zuflucht nehmen. 9) refl. v. sich grämen um. 10) wie. 11) Lebenslauf, m. 12) auf.

18.

My dear friend,

I understand¹ that you are in the habit of going to bed early, and that you don't get up till breakfast is ready. Is that true? I can hardly believe it, because I should think you know better how to employ² your time.

Man lives but³ as long as he is awake and does something useful. If you snore away twelve hours out of⁴ every twenty four, you live but one half of your life, and he⁵ who reaches the age of fifty, of which he has passed one half in bed, cannot be⁵ said to have lived more than fifteen years, because he spent the rest of his time in⁶ eating, drinking, playing, dressing and other more or less useless things.

What shall we be able to say in⁷ justification of such an abuse of our time?

You will find that six or seven hours out of⁴ twenty four are quite sufficient to recover strength against⁹ the fatigues of the following day.

1) Ich erfahre or habe erfahren. 2) see Gram. L. 44, § 13. — 3) nur. 4) von. 5) von dem . . . kann man nicht sagen, daß er z. 6) mit. 7) zur. 8) für die Anstrengungen.

The less you sleep, the longer you live, and in employing your time usefully consists the great art of prolonging life.

Take⁹ my advice: try to get rid¹⁰ of that bad habit. It can but¹¹ be conducive to your health and promote your own interest.

Your well-wisher¹²

John Bennet.

9) Nehmen Sie . . an. 10) abzugeben (acc.). 11) nur. 12) Ihr wohlmeinender.

19.

Honoured Sir,

I wrote to you by Mr. Bright, but not having received any answer makes me very uneasy. Although I have been as economical as possible, yet I find the pocket-money you allowed me to take monthly from Mr. Walter, is not sufficient to defray¹ my necessary expenses, though it was so at first. London is such a place, that, unless² one maintains something of a character,² one is sure³ to be treated with contempt and pointed at⁴ as an object of ridicule.⁵

I assure you, Sir, that I detest extravagance as much as you can desire, and the small sum which I ask as an addition to your former allowance, is only to promote my own interest, which, I⁶ am sure, you have⁷ as much at heart⁷ as any parent possibly can.

My employer will testify that my conduct has been consistent with the strictest rules of morality. I submit to your judgment what you think proper to allow me in future.⁸ I did not choose⁹ to mention my want of money to Mr. W— and, for that reason, have not taken any thing more than what you ordered. I hope you will not be offended with¹⁰ what I have written, as I shall always consider myself happy in performing¹¹ my duty and securing to myself the favour of my honoured parents.

I am, honoured Sir, your

affectionate son

Albert.

1) um . . . zu bestreiten. 2) wenn man nicht etwas vorstellt. — 3) sicherlich, adv. 4) pointed at bezeichnet. 5) des Spottes. 6) I am sure = surely. 7) which you have at heart = daß Ihnen . . . am Herzen liegt. 8) in Zukunft. 9) ich wollte nicht. 10) durch daß, was. 11) translate: to perform, zu erfüllen.

20.

Lord Chesterfield to his Son.

Dear Boy,

People of your age have commonly an unguarded¹ frankness about² them, which makes them the easy prey³ and bubble⁴ of the artful and the experienced; they look upon every knave or fool, who tells them that he is their friend, to be⁵ really so, and pay that profession of simulated friendship with an indiscret and unbounded confidence, always to⁶ their loss, often to their ruin. Beware.⁷ therefore, now that⁸ you are coming into the world, of these false friendships. Receive them with great civility, but with great incredulity too; and pay them with compliments, but not with confidence. Do not let⁹ your vanity and self-love make you suppose that people become your friends at¹⁰ first sight, or even upon¹¹ a short acquaintance. Real friendship is¹² a slow grower,¹² and never thrives, unless ingrafted upon a stock of known and reciprocal merit.

There is another kind of nominal friendship among young people, which is warm for the time,¹³ but by¹⁴ good luck of short duration. This friendship is hastily produced, by their¹⁵ being accidentally thrown together, and pursuing the same course of riot and debauchery. A fine friendship, truly! and well cemented by levity and drunkenness. It should rather be called a conspiracy against morals¹⁶ and good manners, and be punished as such by the civil¹⁷ magistrate. However, they have the impudence and the folly to call this confederacy a friendship. They lend one another money for bad purposes; they engage¹⁸ in quarrels, offensive¹⁹ and defensive, for their accomplices; they tell one another all they know, and often more too, when, of a²⁰ sudden, some²¹ accident disperses them, and they think no more of²² each other, unless²³ it be to betray their imprudent¹ confidence, and

1) unvorsichtig. 2) an sich. 3) zur leichten Beute. 4) Spielball, m. 5) See Gram. L. 44, § 12. — 6) mit ihrem Schaden. 7) Hüte dich daher. 8) da. 9) Ihrer Eitelkeit .. sollen .., see Gram. L. 43, § 11, Note. — 10) auf den ersten Anblick. 11) nach or auf (acc.) ... hin. 12) wächst langsam. 13) zeitweilig. 14) glücklicherweise. 15) dadurch, daß sie. 16) die Moral, sing. 17) der Richter. 18) to engage, sich einlassen. 19) in Offensiv- und Defensiv-Streitigkeiten. 20) plötzlich. — 21) irgend ein Zufall. 22) an. 23) unless it be = außer etwa, um ..

laugh at it.²⁴ Remember to make a great difference between companions and friends; for²⁵ a very complaisant and agreeable companion may²⁵ be a very improper and a very dangerous friend

I long²⁶ to hear from my several correspondents at Leipsic of your arrival there, and what impression you make on them at first; for I have Arguses, with a hundred eyes each, who will watch you narrowly, and relate to me faithfully. My accounts²⁷ will certainly be true; it depends upon you, entirely, of what kind they shall be. Adieu.

24) darüber. 25) denn es kann jemand . . . sein. 26) refl. verb. 27) die Berichte (pl.), die ich erhalte.

Historical Extracts.

1.

Franklin.

Benjamin Franklin was a remarkable rather than an accomplished¹ man, and his name in England is connected with the idea² of worldly prudence and strong common sense; while in the United States of America he is almost adored³ as one of the directors⁴ of their struggle for independence. He has attracted also some attention by his experiments on⁵ lightning. The ancestors of his family had been Englishmen, of Eaton, in Northamptonshire; but at the time when the colonies of North America afforded an easy retreat for all who were dissatisfied with the government at home, his father and his uncle changed their⁶ religious sentiments, became dissenters, and crossed the Atlantic, to settle in New England.

Here his father set up⁷ the business of soap-boiler and tallow-chandler. Benjamin Franklin was born 1706, and was one⁸ of a family of thirteen children. He was

1) sein gebildet. 2) mit dem Begriff von. 3) verehrt. 4) Leiter. 5) über (acc.). 6) ihren Glauben. 7) trieb, etablierte. 8) ein Glied.

tried⁹ at (in) several trades, none¹⁰ of which he liked. Finally he settled¹¹ to the business of printer, one not much practised¹² at that time in the new settlement. His father seems to have contributed much to form the young character of his son; by his example he taught him to aim¹³ at high and honourable¹⁴ objects; by the severity of his remarks he urged him to bestow pains upon the cultivation of an accurate and just taste in¹⁵ compositions; and by his own necessities¹¹, taught him to earn his daily bread with industry and honour.

At seventeen Benjamin disagreed¹⁷ with his elder brother, to whom he had been article¹⁸ as apprentice, and set off to seek his fortune in New York. After several months of labour, he came to England, where he entered a printing office, and worked for a year and a half. This visit proved of great advantage to him, both directly in his business of printer, and indirectly in expanding his mind. His energy and perseverance made him finally a successful tradesman, as was reasonably to be expected.

When the differences between the American colonies and the mother country arose, Franklin was engaged¹⁹ as an agent in England, Canada and France; and the art of²⁰ composition, in which he had become a master, was now employed in drawing up²¹ addresses, manifestoes, and declarations, in defence²² of the politics of the new republic. He was elected one of the delegates to the congress, or temporary government, which took the first steps towards²³ cutting off the ties binding America to the British empire; and after enjoying many honours, he died at Philadelphia, in 1790.

9) probiert. 10) von denen ihm keines gefiel. 11) Endlich entschloß er sich zu. 12) betrieben. 13) zu streben nach. 14) und würdigen Zielen. 15) im Stil. 16) Dürftigkeit, sing. 17) wurde uneinig. 18) dem er als L. verdingungen war. 19) angestellt. 20) die Kunst des Stils. — 21) zum Entwerfen von. 22) zur Verteidigung der Politik. 23) zur Lösung der Bande.

2.

Patriotism of Regulus.

The Carthaginians¹ resolved to send to Rome, to negotiate² a peace, or at least to procure³ an exchange

1) die Karthager. 2) um über einen Frieden zu unterhandeln. — 3) zu erlangen.

of prisoners. For this purpose they supposed that Regulus, the Roman general, whom they had now for⁴ four years kept in prison, would be a proper silicitor.⁵ It was expected⁶ that⁷, being wearied with imprisonment⁷ and bondage, he would gladly endeavour to persuade his countrymen to discontinue⁸ the war, which only prolonged his captivity. He was accordingly sent with their ambassadors to Rome, but with a promise, previously axacted⁹ from him, to return, in case, of being unsuccessful. He was¹¹ even given to understand that his life depended upon¹² the success of his expedition.

When this old general, together with the ambassadors of Carthage, approached Rome, many of his friends came out¹³ to see him and congratulate¹⁴ him on his return. Their acclamations resounded through the city; but Regulus refused to enter the gates. It was in vain that he was entreated on every side to visit once more his little dwelling, and share in¹⁵ that joy which his return had inspired. He persisted in saying that he was now but a slave belonging to the Carthaginians, and unfit to partake¹⁵ in the honours of his country. The senate assembling¹⁶ without the walls, as usual, to give audience to the ambassadors, Regulus opened his commission, as he had been directed¹⁷ by the Carthaginian council, and their ambassadors seconded his proposals. The senate was, by this time, weary of a war, which had been protracted above eight years, and was no way¹⁸ disinclined¹⁹ to a peace. It seemed the general opinion that the enmity between the two states had continued²⁰ too long, and that no terms²¹ should be refused, which might not only give rest to the two nations, but liberty to an old brave general, whom the people revered and loved.

4) for 4 years = vier Jahre lang. 5) Bittsteller. 6) Man erwartete. 7) daß er, der Gefangenschaft müde or überdrüssig . . . 8) zu beendigen. 9) welches ihm zuvor abgedrungen wurde. 10) im Fall, daß es ihm nicht gelingen sollte. 11) Man gab ihm sogar zu verstehen. — 12) von. 13) kamen ihm entgegen. 14) beglückwünschen über. 15) und Teil zu nehmen an (*Dat.*). — 16) refl. v. sich versammeln. 17) wie ihm . . . aufgegeben war. 18) no way, *adv.* keineswegs. 19) abgeneigt (*dat.*). 20) gedauert. 21) Bedingungen.

3.

The same Subject continued.

It¹ only remained for Regulus to give his opinion, who, when it came to² his turn to speak, to³ the surprise of⁴ every person present⁴, gave his voice for continuing⁵ the war. He assured the senate that the Carthaginian⁶ resources were now almost exhausted; their populace⁷ harassed out⁸ with fatigues, and their nobles with contention; that all their best generals were prisoners with⁹ the Romans, while Carthage had none but the refuse¹⁰ of the Roman army; that not only the interest of Rome, but its honour also was concerned¹¹ in continuing the war; for their ancestors had never made peace till they were victorious.

So unexpected an advice not [a] little disturbed¹² the senate; they saw the justice¹³ of his opinion, but they also saw the dangers he incurred¹⁴ by giving it; they seemed entirely satisfied with the expediency¹⁵ of prolonging the war; their only obstacle was how to secure¹⁶ the safety of *him*, who had advised its continuance; they pitied, and admired a man, who had used such eloquence against his private interest, and could not conclude¹⁷ upon a measure which was to terminate in (mit) his ruin.¹⁸ Regulus, however, soon relieved¹⁹ their embarrassment by breaking off the treaty¹⁹ and by rising in order to return to his bonds and confinement. It was in vain, that the senate and all his dearest friends entreated him to stay; he still repressed²⁰ their solicitations. Marcia, his wife, with her little children, filled the city with her lamentations, and vainly entreated to be²¹ permitted to see him; he still obstinately persisted in keeping his promise; and though sufficiently apprized²² of the tortures that awaited him on (bei) his return, without embracing his family or taking leave of his friends, he departed with the ambassadors for Carthage.

1) Es blieb R. nur übrig. 2) als die Reihe an ihn kam. 3) zum Erstaunen. 4) aller Anwesenden. 5) für die Fortsetzung. 6) karthagisch. 7) das Volk. 8) ganz erschöpft von. 9) bei. 10) den Auswurf. 11) be-theiligt. 12) in Verlegenheit bringen, beunruhigen. 13) Richtigkeit. — 14) lief. 15) Richtigkeit. 16) Translate: how they should secure (sicher stellen). 17) konnten sich nicht entschließen für eine Maßregel. — 18) Verderben, n. 19) machte . . dadurch ein Ende, daß er die Unterhandlung abbrach. 10) wies zurück. 21) daß man ihr (Dat.) erlauben möchte. 22) belehrt über.

Nothing could equal the fury²³ and the disappointment of the Carthaginians, when they were informed by their ambassadors that Regulus, instead of promoting a peace, had given his opinion for continuing the war. They accordingly prepared to punish his conduct with the most studied²⁴ tortures At last when malice was fatigued with²⁵ studying all the arts of torture, he was put into a barrel stuck²⁶ full of nails that pointed inwards, and in this painful position he continued²⁷ till he died.

Goldsmith.

23) Dat. der Wut . . . gleichkommen. 24) mit den ausgeführtesten Martern. 25) auszufinnen. 26) daß mit Nägeln beschlagen war, deren Spitzen nach innen standen. 27) blieb er.

4.

Copernicus.

Copernicus derives his celebrity from his researches into¹ the laws which regulate the solar system. This system comprehends a number of the heavenly bodies depending² on the sun. In early times, it had been observed that some of the stars varied their place with³ regard to other stars, and these were therefore called *planets*, from a Greek word signifying *to wander*. The sun, the moon, the earth, and the planets form altogether the solar system.

It was³ required of astronomy to account⁵ [for] all the appearances which may be seen in these heavenly bodies: for the seasons, for the months, for the movements of the Planet Venus, for those of Jupiter, and all the others. It had been supposed, by those who considered the subject in ancient times, that the earth was the principal body amongst all these, and that the others rolled⁶ round it. Various alterations had been made in this supposition⁷, as observation pointed out⁸ things which were quite contrary to it. The opinion of (von) the central position of the earth, and the dependence of the rest upon it⁹, continued¹⁰ till the time of Copernicus. He shewed that the truth is that the sun is the chief body of all

1) über. 2) welche von der Sonne abhängen. 3) im Verhältniß zu. 4) Man verlangte. 5) daß sie . . . erkläre (acc.). 6) sich bewegten. — 7) Annahme. 8) erkannte or andeutete. 9) von derselben. 10) blieb herrschend bis auf.

these which belong to the solar system, and that the rest turn round it. This was a very considerable alteration.

The ancient supposition¹¹ had been assisted by the most ingenious conjectures with regard¹² to the motions of the planets. But by all these conjectures and alterations, it had become a most complicated and difficult system, and what remained unaccounted for¹³, was a strong objection to its truth.

When Copernicus substituted¹⁴ a number¹⁵ of the heavenly bodies revolving¹⁵ round the sun, and shewed that the earth is one of them, he abolished all the ingenious errors of the ancient method, and gave us a system clear and simple. His merits consist in this: he shewed that the various places, movements, and appearances of the planets can be fully explained and accounted for, by imagining¹⁶ them to move round the sun as a centre: Mercury in eighty-seven days, Venus in two hundred and twenty-four, the earth in one year, Mars in nearly two, Jupiter in eleven, Saturn in twenty-nine.

It is to be¹⁷ remarked, also, that these discoveries were made by him with very poor¹⁸ instruments for his observations, and without any telescopes. But in spite of all difficulties, he made known to mankind the true system of the universe, and has left¹⁹ behind him an everlasting memorial of his industry and genius.²⁰ He was born at Thorn in Prussia, and studied in Italy at Bologna. His new doctrines gave offence²¹ to the Pope, Urban VIII., and for a time he was thrown into prison. He died 1543, in his seventy-first year.

11) Theorie. 12) in Beziehung auf (acc.). 13) unerklärt. 14) die Behauptung aufstellte. 15) daß eine Anzahl . . . drehte (refl. v.). — 16) dadurch, daß man annimmt, daß sie. 17) See Gram. Less. 44, § 8, Note. — 18) schwach, armthelig. 19) left behind him = hinterlassen. 20) Genius, Geist, m. 21) Ärgerniß.

5.

History of Catharine 1st, Empress of Russia.

I.

Catharine, born near Dorpat, a little city in Livonia, was¹ heiress to no other inheritance than the virtues and frugality of her parents. Her father being dead, she lived with her aged mother in their cottage covered

1) hatte nichts von . . . geerbt als.

with straw; and both, though very poor, were very contented. Here, retired from the gaze of the world, by the labor of her hands, she supported² her parent, who was now incapable of supporting herself. While Catharine spun, the old woman would³ sit by and read some book of devotion;⁴ thus, when the fatigues of the day were over, both would⁵ sit down contentedly by their fire-side, and enjoy their frugal meal.

Though her face and person⁶ were models of perfection, yet her whole attention seemed bestowed upon her mind; her mother taught her [to] read, and an old Lutheran⁷ minister instructed her in the maxims⁸ and duties of religion. Nature had furnished her with a ready and a solid turn of thought,⁹ and with a strong understanding. Such truly female accomplishments¹⁰ procured her several solicitations¹¹ of marriage from the peasants of the country; but their offers were refused; for she loved her mother too tenderly to think of a separation.¹²

Catharine was fifteen years old, when her mother died; she now therefore left her cottage, and went to live with¹³ the Lutheran minister, by whom she had been instructed from her childhood. In his house she resided in quality¹⁴ of governess to¹⁵ his children, at once reconciling in her character unerring prudence with surprising vivacity.

The old man, who regarded her as one of his children, had¹⁶ her instructed in dancing and music by the masters who attended the rest of his family; thus she continued to improve¹⁷, till he died, by which accident she was once more reduced¹⁸ to pristine poverty. The country of Livonia was at this time wasted by war, and lay in a most¹⁹ miserable state of desolation. Those calamities are ever most heavy upon the poor; wherefore Catharine, though possessed²⁰ of so many accomplishments, experienced all the miseries of hopeless in-

2) ernährte sie ihre Mutter. 3) pflegte . . . dabei zu sitzen. 4) in einem Gebetbuch. 5) saßen . . . vor or bei ihrem Kamin or Herd. 6) Gestalt, f. 7) lutherischer Pfarrer. 8) Lehren, pl. 9) Gedankengang. — 10) Eigenschaften. 11) Heiraths-Anerbieten. 12) um an eine Trennung zu denken, see Gram. L. 44, § 11. — 13) bei. 14) als. 15) Use the genitive case. 16) ließ sie im T . . . unterrichten, see Gram. L. 40, III, § 4. — 17) sich auszubilden. 18) in ihre frühere Armut zurückgeworfen. 19) höchst elend. 20) im Besitz von.

digence. Provisions becoming every day more scarce, and her private¹ stock being exhausted, she resolved at last to travel to Marienburgh, a city of greater plenty.

With her scanty wardrobe packed up in a wallet, she set out on her journey²² on foot; she was to²³ walk through a region miserable by nature, but rendered still more hideous²⁴ by the Swedes and Russians, who, as²⁵ each happened to become master, plundered it at²⁶ discretion; but hunger had taught her to despise the dangers and fatigues of the way.

21) ihr eigener Vorrat. 22) trat sie ihre Reise zu Fuße an. 23) sie mußte. 24) trauriger, entsetzlicher. 25) Je nachdem die einen oder die anderen zufällig Herr wurden. 26) nach Belieben.

II.

One evening upon her journey, as she entered a cottage by¹ the way-side to take up her lodging for the night, she was insulted by two Swedish soldiers, who might probably have carried their insults into violence,² had not a subaltern³ officer, accidentally passing by, come in to her assistance; upon⁴ his appearing, the soldiers immediately desisted; but her thankfulness was hardly greater than her surprise, when she instantly recognized⁵, in her deliverer, the son of the Lutheran minister, her former instructor, benefactor and friend.

This was a happy interview for Catharine; the little stock of money she had brought from home, was by⁶ this time quite exhausted, her clothes were gone, piece by piece, in order to satisfy those who had entertained her in their houses; her generous countryman, therefore, parted⁷ with what he could spare,⁸ to buy her clothes, furnished her with a horse, and gave her letters of recommendation to Mr. Gluck, a faithful friend of his father's, and superintendent at Marienburgh.

Our beautiful stranger had⁹ only to appear to be well received; she was immediately admitted into the superintendent's family, as governess to his two daughters; and though yet but¹⁰ seventeen, showed herself capable of instructing her sex, not only in virtue, but

1) am Wege, die am Wege stand. 2) Bis zur Gewalt getrieben hätten. 3) ein Unteroffizier. 4) bei. 5) erkannte. 6) um diese Zeit. 7) parted with, *lit.* trennte sich von, here: gab . . her. 8) entbehren. 9) brauchte nur . . . , um gut aufgenommen zu werden. 10) yet but, erst.

in politeness. Such¹¹ was her good sense and beauty, that her master himself in a short time offered her his hand, which, to his great surprise, she thought¹² proper to refuse. Actuated by a sentiment of gratitude, she was resolved¹³ to marry her deliverer only, even though¹⁴ he had lost an arm, and was otherwise disfigured by wounds in the service.

In order therefore to prevent further solicitations¹⁵ from others, as soon as the officer came to town upon duty,¹⁶ she offered him her person which he accepted with transport, and their nuptials were solemnized as usual. But all the lines of her fortune were¹⁷ to be striking; the very day on which they were married, the Russians laid¹⁸ siege to Marienburgh. The unhappy soldier had now no time to enjoy the well-earned pleasures of matrimony; he was called off to an attack, from which he never after returned.

11) So groß. 12) für angemessen hielt. 13) entschlossen, *adj.* — 14) even though . . . wenn er gleich . . . 15) Put the dative with vor'beugen. 16) im Dienst. 17) were to be, sollten sein. 18) laid siege to . . . fingen an M. zu belagern.

III.

In the mean time the siege went on with fury, aggravated on one side by obstinacy, on the other by revenge. This war between the two northern powers was, at that time, truly barbarous; the innocent peasant, and the harmless virgin often shared the fate of the soldier in arms. Marienburgh was then taken by¹ assault; and such was the fury of the assailants, that not only the garrison, but almost all the inhabitants, men, women, and children were put² to the sword. At length, when the carnage was pretty³ well over, Catharine was found hid in an oven.

She had been hitherto poor, but still was free; she⁴ was now to conform⁴ to her hard fate, and to learn what it was to be a slave; in this situation, however, she behaved with piety and humility; and though misfortune had abated her vivacity, yet she was cheerful. The fame of her beauty and resignation reached Prince Menzikoff, the Russian General; he desired to see her, was struck

1) mit Sturm. 2) were put to the sword . . . über die Klinge springen mußten. 3) pretty well over, ziemlich vorüber. 4) sie mußte sich nun in (acc.) . . . fassen.

with⁵ her beauty, bought her of the soldier, her master, and placed her under the direction of his own sister. Here she was treated with all the respect which her merit deserved, while her beauty every day improved with her good fortune.

She had not been long in this situation, when Peter the Great paid⁶ the prince a visit, and Catharine happened to come in with some dry fruits, which she served round with peculiar modesty. The mighty monarch saw her, and was struck⁵ with her beauty. He returned the next day, called for⁷ the beautiful slave, asked⁸ her several questions, and found her understanding even more perfect than her person.

He had been forced, when young, to marry from motives of interest; he was now resolved to marry according to his own inclination. He immediately inquired into⁹ the history of the fair Livonian, who was not yet eighteen. He traced¹⁰ her through the veil of obscurity, through all the vicissitudes¹¹ of her fortune, and found her truly great in them all. The meanness¹² of her birth was no obstacle to his design; their nuptials were solemnized in private; the Prince assuring his courtiers that virtue alone was the most proper ladder to a throne.

We now see Catharine, from the low mud-walled¹³ cottage, Empress of the greatest kingdom upon earth. The poor solitary wanderer is now surrounded by thousands, who find happiness in her smile. She, who formerly wanted¹⁴ a meal, is now capable of diffusing plenty upon whole nations. To her fortune she owed a part of this pre-eminence,¹⁵ but to her virtues more.

She ever after retained those great qualities which first placed her on a throne; and, while the extraordinary Prince, her husband, labored for¹⁶ the reformation of his male subjects, she studied in her turn¹⁷ the improvement of her own sex. She altered their dresses, introduced mixed assemblies, instituted¹⁸ an order of female knighthood; and at length, when she had greatly

5) wurde getroffen or geblendet von. 6) machte or abstattete. 7) verlangte nach. 8) stellte mehrere Fr. an sie. 9) sich erkundigen nach. 10) er folgte ihr . . 11) Wechselfälle. 12) Niedrigkeit. 13) aus Lehmmauern bestehend. 14) She who wanted a. m., Sie, der es früher an einem Mittagsmahl fehlte, or die nichts zu essen hatte. 15) Vorrang, m., höherer Rang. 16) arbeitete an. 17) ihrerseits. 18) stiftete einen Orden weiblicher Ritterchaft.

filled¹⁹ all the stations²⁰ of Empress, friend, wife, and mother, bravely died without regret, regretted by all.

Goldsmith.

19) bekleidet or eingenommen. 20) Lebensstellungen als R.

6.

Combat between the Horatii and Curiatii.

I.

After the death of Numa, the Roman people elected Tullus Hostilius for¹ their king. This monarch was every way² unlike his predecessor, being entirely devoted to war, so that he only sought a pretext for³ leading his forces to the field. The Albans were the first people who gave him an opportunity of indulging⁴ his favorite inclination. The Roman and Alban forces met⁵ about five miles from Rome, prepared⁶ to decide the fate of their respective kingdom; for almost every battle in these barbarous times was decisive. The two armies were for some time drawn out⁷ in array, awaiting the signal to begin, both chiding⁸ the length of that dreadful suspense which kept⁹ them from death or victory. But an unexpected proposal from the Alban general put a stop¹⁰ to the onset: he stepped in between both armies, and by single¹¹ combat, offered the Romans a choice of deciding the dispute; adding, that the side whose champion was overcome, should submit¹² to the conqueror.

A proposal like this suited¹³ the impetuous temper of the Roman king, and was embraced¹⁴ with joy by his subjects, each of whom¹⁵ hoped that himself should be chosen to fight¹⁶ the cause of his country. Many valiant men offered themselves, but could not be accepted to the exclusion of others, till, at last, chance¹⁷ suggested a remedy. There were at that time three brothers in each army; those of the Romans were called Horatii, and the Albans Curiatii; all were remarkable for their courage, strength and activity; to them it was resolved¹⁸ to commit the management of the combat.

1) zu. 2) in jeder Beziehung. 3) zu führen. 4) zu befriedigen. 5) trafen zusammen. 6) refl. v. 7) in Schlachtordnung aufgestellt. — 8) Beide scheltend über (acc.). 9) abhielt. 10) verhinderte den Angriff. 11) durch den Einzelkampf or Zweikampf. 12) refl. v. sich unterwerfen. 13) gefiel (dat.). 14) aufgenommen. 15) von denen jeder. 16) die Sache seines B. auszufechten. 17) Use the article, der Zufall. 18) es wurde beschlossen, ihnen . . . anzuvertrauen.

II.

When the previous ceremony of oaths and protestations, binding¹ the army of the vanquished party to submit to that of the victorious, was over², the combatants were led forth, amidst the encouragements, the prayers, and the shouts of their country. They were reminded of³ their former achievements; they were admonished that their fathers, their countrymen, and even the gods, were spectators of their behaviour. When the people expected to see them rush to combat, they quit-⁴ted their arms, and embraced each other with all the marks of the most tender friendship; but at length warned of⁵ the importance of the trial, the champions engaged;⁶ and each, totally regardless of his own safety, sought only the destruction of his opponent.

The spectators, in horrid silence, trembled at⁷ every blow, and wished to share the danger, till at length victory⁸, which had hitherto been doubtful, appeared to declare against the Romans; they beheld two of their champions lying⁹ dead upon the plain, and the three Curatii, being all wounded, slowly endeavouring to pursue the survivor,¹⁰ who seemed by flight to beg¹¹ for mercy. The Alban army, unable to suppress their joy, raised a loud acclamation, while the Romans inwardly cursed and repined¹² at the cowardice of him whom they saw in circumstances of such baseness. Soon, however, they began to alter their sentiments, when they perceived that his flight was only pretended,¹³ in order to separate his antagonists, whom¹⁴ he was unable to oppose united.

1) welche . . . verpflichteten; see Gram. L. 45, § 4. — 2) vorüber. 3) an ihre früheren Thaten. 4) legten sie ihre Waffen nieder. 5) erinnert an (acc.). 6) begannen den Kampf. 7) bei. 8) Use the article. 9) tot auf dem Boden liegen (Infinitive). 10) Überlebenden. 11) um Gnade zu bitten (shien. 12) und verdrießlich waren über (acc.). 13) verstellt. 14) Dative, pl.

III.

The Roman champion quickly after stopped his course, and turning upon¹ him who followed most closely behind him, laid him dead at his feet. The second brother, advancing to² assist him who was fallen, soon shared

1) und indem er sich gegen denjenigen wandte, welcher. 2) um dem Gefallenen zu Hilfe zu kommen.

the same fate: and now [there] remained but the last Curiatius to conquer, who, fatigued and quite disabled³ with his wounds, slowly came up to offer easy victory. He was killed, almost unresisting,⁴ while the conqueror exulting, offered him as a victim to the superiority of the Romans, whom⁵ now the Alban army consented to obey.

A victory so great, and attended with such signal effects, deserved every honour⁶ Rome could bestow; but, as if none of the virtues of that age were to be⁷ without alloy, the hand which in the morning was exerted to⁸ save his country, was before night imbued in the blood of a sister. Returning triumphant from the field, it⁹ raised his indignation to behold her bathed¹⁰ in tears, and lamenting the loss of her lover, one of the Curiatii, to whom she was betrothed; but, upon seeing the vest which she had made for her lover, among the number of his spoils, and hearing her upbraidings, it provoked him¹¹ beyond the power of sufferance, so that he slew her in a rage. This action greatly displeased the senate, and drew on himself¹² the condemnation of the magistrates; but he¹³ was pardoned by making¹⁴ his appeal to the people.

Goldsmith.

3) kampfunfähig in Folge seiner Wunden. 4) fast ohne Widerstand. 5) welchen, Dat. plur. governed by gehorchen. 6) Add. which. 7) ohne Flecken sein sollte. 8) zur Rettung f. B. angestrengt wurde. 9) erregte es. 10) in Thränen schwimmend. 11) reizte es ihn mehr als er ertragen konnte. 12) zog ihm . . . zu. 13) es wurde ihm verziehen; for this dative, see Gram. L. 22, § 7. 14) indem er an das B. appellirte.

7.

Captain Cook.

I.

James Cook, one of the most celebrated circumnavigators ever produced by Britain or any other country, was a native of¹ Yorkshire, and born in 1728. Before the age of thirteen he was bound² apprentice to a shopkeeper near Whitby; but some disagreement taking place between himself and his master, he indulged³ his own inclination in binding⁴ himself to some owners of coal-vessels at Whitby, and after serving for some years as a common sailor, he was raised to be⁵ mate in one of

1) was a native of Y = war aus Y. 2) verbunden als L. an. 3) folgte, dat. 4) indem er sich an (acc.) . . . verdingte. 5) zum Schiffskadetten.

these ships. By and by he entered the king's service, and by distinguishing himself as a nautical surveyor, and a good calculator and mathematician, he raised⁶ himself to notice.

It having been calculated that a transit (Durchgang) of Venus over the sun's disk⁷ would happen in 1769, a memorial to His Majesty was presented by the Royal Society, in which they stated the importance of making proper observations of this transit, and the attention which had been paid⁸ to it in other countries, and entreated that persons might be sent out, at the government's expense, to the Friendly Islands, for the sake⁹ of making the proper observations. Alexander Dalrymple was selected, but when the appointment¹⁰ of this gentleman to the command was brought before the Admiralty, Sir Edward Hawke refused to sign the commission¹⁰ of a man not¹¹ brought up at sea, and unacquainted with the management¹² of a ship; for Mr. Dalrymple's qualifications¹³ were those of an astronomer. On the other hand Dalrymple would not go without the commission, and the difficulty ended in¹⁴ the appointment of Cook.

Captain Wallis, who had already been round the world (1766—1768) pitched¹⁵ upon Otaheite as the proper island for the astronomical observations. Cook was made a¹⁶ lieutenant, and sailed July 30th, 1768, with Mr. Banks, afterwards the famous Sir Joseph Banks, Dr. Solander and others. The countries discovered during this voyage, and those that followed, are now familiar to us, and need not be mentioned here; but to¹⁷ give a more distinct notion¹⁸ of Cook's character, we will sketch¹⁹ a few of his adventures, and relate the manner of his death.

6) machte er sich bemerklich. 7) die Sonnenscheibe. 8) gezoht. — 9) um . . . zu machen. 10) Ernennung. 11) transl. who was not etc. der nicht im Seedienst erzogen und . . . war. 12) Leitung. 13) Befähigung, sing. 14) mit. 15) pitched upon, entschied sich für. 17) zum Z. 17) um . . . zu geben. 18) Begriff, m. 19) kurz schildern.

II.

When they got¹ to Otaheite, the whole affair of the transit of Venus was nearly frustrated by a single savage, who stole the quadrant; by judicious² exertions, how-

1) kamen. 2) durch fluge Bemühungen.

ever, it was regained. The day of the transit was clear, and the observations were successfully made. When the ship first arrived at Otaheite, provisions were obtained by the exchange of beads³ and other trifles; but these ornaments became no longer matters⁴ of request, and the nails were next produced; on dealing with this new article, a nail⁵, four inches long, would purchase⁵ twenty cocoa nuts, and bread-fruit in proportion. June 26th, Cook made a circuit in the pinnace round the island; he also took on board a principal man of the island, Tupia, with a boy of about thirteen. They left Otaheite, and touched⁶ at Huaheine, where the king Oree was so pleased with the English, that he desired to exchange names with Cook, and the lieutenant, therefore, was called Oree, while the king took the title of Cookee.

Soon afterwards they reached New Zealand, which had been discovered by Tasman, a Dutch navigator, a hundred years before. The New Zealanders were very thievish and unfriendly, and many lives were lost in the quarrels that took place. On one occasion, Tayeto, the Otahetian boy, was leaning over the side to hand up some fish, when one of the Zealanders dragged⁷ him into the canoe, and paddled off⁸ as fast as possible. The marines, on this violent aggression, fired with effect, and Tayeto sprang into the sea and swam back to the ship. In this island, or rather these two islands, were seen certain proofs of the prevalence⁹ of the practice of eating human flesh.

At¹⁰ great risk Cook explored the strait which separates New Zealand into two islands, nearly equal to one another; a current of much violence ran through it, and the ship was scarcely saved from the rocks. This strait is four or five leagues broad at the narrowest part. The adventurers took in a store of fresh water and of wood, and sailed for Indian seas,¹¹ intending to return by the Cape of Good Hope to England. They explored a part of the coast of New Holland, or New South Wales, and anchored in a bay, which, from the numerous unknown plants found near it (nahe dabei), was called Botany

3) Glasperlen. 4) gesuchte Gegenstände. 5) für einen Nagel . . . erhandelten sie. 6) landeten. 7) zog. 8) ruderte fort. 9) von dem Vorkommen der Gewohnheit = von der herrschenden Gewohnheit, M. zu essen. 10) Mit großer Gefahr. 11) nach dem indischen Meer, sing.

Bay. As the sea on this coast was altogether unknown, they were in constant danger from¹² the coral reefs and rocks with which the waters abound.¹³

12) wegen der Korallen-Riffe. 13) an denen . . . reich sind.

III.

On one occasion the ship grounded¹ and was lifted over the ledge of a rock, and lay in a hollow within it, while the bumping² and grating of the bottom tore away the sheathing-boards³ and the false keel, and parts of her planking⁴ were floating about.⁵ When they extricated the ship from this peril, she drew⁶ so much water, that three pumps could hardly keep it down; they then took a sail, and mixing a large quantity of oakum⁷ and wool together, stitched⁸ them down by handfuls⁸ and then spread⁹ the whole with sheep's-dung. The sail was then hauled¹⁰ uner the ship's bottom, and when it came to the leak, the wool and oakum, with a part of the sail, were forced inwards¹¹ by the pressure of the water, so that one pump, instead of three, now sufficed to keep it under.¹² But they afterwards discovered that the rock itself had contributed to their preservation, for a large piece of it had stuck in one of the holes, and so had kept out the water.

Cook returned home after losing the astronomer who had taken the transit, the midshipman who had suggested the method of patching up¹³ the damaged bottom by a sail, and several others, by sickness, and arrived in England on the 11th June, 1771. The circumstances here mentioned induced him to pay so much attention to the health of his men, that on his second voyage, which lasted more than three years, he lost only one man, and that¹⁴ by consumption.

In 1776 he left on a third voyage, going by the Cape of Good Hope, New Zealand, the Sandwich Islands, to the point where the great continents of America and

1) lief auf den Grund. 2) das heftige Stoßen und Krachen. 3) die kupfernen Beschläge. 4) Planken. 5) schwammen umher. 6) ließ es soviel Wasser ein, daß. 7) Berg. 8) nähten sie handvollweise darauf. 9) beschmierten. 10) gezogen. 11) hineingepreßt. 12) nieder. 13) zu verstopfen. 14) und zwar an der Auszehrung.

Asia approach most nearly to each other. In February, 1779, he left the island of Owhyhee, or Ooui, well provided with stores of fresh meat, but unhappily a storm brought him back again. Quarrels began by¹⁵ the natives stealing the tongs and chisel from the armourer's forge; and the day that¹⁶ this happened, there were blows struck and stones thrown in attempts¹⁷ to recover them and punish the thief. The next night the large cutter of one of his vessels was carried off, and Cook set out¹⁸ with armed men to the king's residence.

15) dadurch, daß die Eingeborenen . . . stahlen. 16) an welchem.
17) um zu versuchen. 18) machte sich auf den Weg.

IV.

All was very quiet, and there was every show¹ of submission, till the news came in that one of the native chiefs had been killed by the people in the boats. Now the savages began to arm themselves with long spears, clubs, knives, and mats, and the women, who had been sitting on the shore chatting and eating, removed themselves; while a low murmur ran through the multitude. An old priest came with a cocoa-nut, and by singing and making a noise, endeavoured to distract Captain Cook's attention. He began to think that there² was danger, and retired with the marines to the shore, holding the king by the hand, who went very quietly and willingly with him. The natives made a lane for them [to pass], and as they had only fifty or sixty yards to go, and as the boats lay about their own length from the shore, there was no apprehension of the fatal³ result.

The king's youngest son entered the pinnace without hesitation, and the king himself was doing⁴ the same, when his wife threw her arms round his neck, and with one or two chiefs detained him. Cook was desirous of getting the king on board, but after ineffectual attempts was ready to give it up, when one of the natives threw a stone at⁵ him. Cook fired at⁵ him with small shot, but the fellow had a thick mat, and the charge had little effect;⁶ another brandished his spear, when Cook levelled⁷ the second barrel, and missing him, shot the next; the

1) aller Anschein von. 2) daß Gefahr vorhanden war. 3) vor einem traurigen Ausgang. 4) war im Begriff, dasselbe zu thun. 5) auf (acc.) or nach. 6) wenig Wirkung. 7) anlegte.

sergeant then aimed, and killed him on the spot. When the man fell, the natives retired, but urged by those behind, advanced again, and threw a volley of stones. On his the marines fired, and so⁸ did the people in the boats. Captain Cook did not approve [of] this firing, and waved⁹ his hand to stop it, desiring also the boats to come closer to receive the marines. Unfortunately, this waving of the hand was mistaken by one of the officers for a signal to go further off the shore;¹⁰ the natives made a rush, the marines hastened to the boats, and Cook was left alone.

He went towards the boat with one hand on the back¹¹ of his head, to protect it from stones, and with his musket under his arm. One native, with great marks of fear, followed, and struck him on the back of the head with a club. Cook staggered and fell; then another stabbed him in the neck with a dagger. Cook staggered knee-deep into the water, being within five or six yards, all this time, of his own boat. The savages crowded¹² around him,¹² and struggled with him in the water, and finally despatched¹³ him, while the men in the boat, as it were¹⁴, within arm's length of him, were so confused and crowded, that they could do nothing. Under these circumstances blame¹⁵ has been laid on one or two individuals concerned¹⁵, imputing either carelessness or stupidity, but it seems no wonder that, in such a crowd of assailants, the result was thus fatal. Cook's body was devoured by the savages, and only some bones and the hands, already salted, were obtained by burning a village, and other acts of war.

The peculiar excellence¹⁶ of Cook's voyages consists in this¹⁷ that everything is seen with an accurate and observing eye. He describes the productions, habits of the natives, appearances of the seas, water-spouts in the air, oyster-beds, [in] short everything in a way¹⁸ that interests and delights us.

8) und daß Gleiche thaten. 9) winkte mit der H. 10) weiter vom Ufer weg. 11) the back of the h. der Hinterkopf. 12) umringten ihn. — 13) töteten. 14) gleichsam, sozusagen. 15) wurde die Schuld einem od. zwei der Beteiligten zugeschoben, indem man. 16) das Verdienst. — 17) darin. 18) auf eine Weise, die.

8.

Discovery of America.

I.

On the third of August, in the year 1492, Columbus set sail, a little before sunrise, in presence of a vast crowd of spectators, who sent [up] their supplications to heaven for the prosperous issue of the voyage, which they wished rather than expected. Columbus steered directly for¹ the Canary Islands, and arrived there without any occurrence that would have deserved notice on any other occasion. But in a voyage of such expectation and importance, every circumstance was the object of attention.

On the first of October they were, according to the admiral's reckoning, seven hundred and seventy leagues to the west² of the Canaries; but, lest³ his men should be intimidated by the prodigious length of the navigation, he gave out⁴ that they had proceeded only five hundred and eight-four leagues; and fortunately for Columbus, neither his own pilot nor those of the other ships had skill enough to correct this error and discover the deceit. They had now been above three weeks at sea; they had proceeded far beyond what⁵ former navigators had attempted or deemed possible;⁶ all their prognostics of discovery, drawn from the flight of birds and other circumstances, had proved⁷ fallacious; the appearances of land, with which their own credulity or the artifice of their commander had from time to time flattered and amused them, had been altogether illusive, and their prospect of⁸ success seemed now to be as distant as ever.

These reflections often occurred to men who had no other object or occupation than to reason and discourse concerning⁹ the intention and circumstances of their expedition. They made impression at first upon the ignorant and timid, and extending¹⁰ by degrees to such as¹¹ were better informed or more resolute, the contagion spread¹⁰ at length from ship to ship. From secret whispers or murmuring they proceeded to open

1) nach. 2) westwärts von. 3) damit seine Leute nicht . . .
 4) gab er an. 5) viel weiter als was. 6) oder für möglich gehalten hatten. 7) hatten sich als . . . erwiesen. 8) Aussicht auf. 9) über (acc.).
 10) indem sie sich . . . ausdehnten. 11) auf solche, die.

cabals and public complaints. They taxed¹² their sovereign with inconsiderate credulity¹², in paying such regard¹² to the vain promises and rash conjectures of an indigent foreigner, as to¹³ hazard the lives of so many of her own subjects in prosecuting a chimerical scheme. They affirmed that they had fully performed their duty by venturing¹⁴ so far in an unknown and hopeless course, and could incur¹⁵ no blame for refusing¹⁶ to follow any longer a desperate adventurer to certain destruction. They contended that it was necessary to think of returning¹⁷ to Spain, while their crazy vessels were still in a condition to keep the sea, but expressed their fears that the attempt would prove vain, as the wind, which had hitherto been so favourable to their course, must render it impossible to sail in the opposite direction.

12) Sie beschuldigten ihre Königin einer unbesonnenen Leichtgläubigkeit, indem dieselbe den . . . soviel Glauben geschenkt hätte. 13) daß sie das Leben (sing.) . . . aufs Spiel setzte. 14) refl. v. sich wagen. 15) sich . . . zuziehen. 16) See Gram. L. 45. 17) Inf. with zu.

II.

All agreed that Columbus should be compelled by force to adopt a measure on which their common safety depended. Some of the more audacious proposed, as the most expeditious and certain method for getting¹ rid at once of his remonstrances, to throw him into the sea, being persuaded that on their return to Spain, the death of an unsuccessful projector would excite little concern, and be² inquired into with no curiosity.

Columbus was fully sensible³ of his perilous situation. He had observed, with great uneasiness, the fatal operation of⁴ ignorance and of fear⁴ in producing⁵ disaffection among his crew, and saw that it was now ready to burst out into open mutiny. He retained, however, perfect presence⁶ of mind. He affected⁷ to seem ignorant of their machinations. Notwithstanding the agitation and solicitude of his own mind, he appeared with cheerful countenance, like a man satisfied with the progress he had made, and confident of success. Sometimes⁸ he employed all the arts of insinuation to soothe his men, sometimes⁸ he endeavoured to work upon their ambition

1) loszuwerden (Genit.). 2) und daß es nicht genau untersucht werden würde. 3) erkannte (acc.). 4) Article. 5) zu erwecken. 6) Geistesgegenwart. 7) Er stellte sich, als ob er v . . . nichts wüßte. 8) Bald — bald.

or avarice by magnificent descriptions of the fame and wealth they were about to acquire. On other occasions he assumed a tone of authority, and threatened them with vengeance from their sovereign, if⁹, by their dastardly behaviour, they should defeat⁹ this noble effort to promote the glory of God, and to exalt the Spanish name above that of every other nation. Even with¹⁰ seditious sailors, the words of a man whom they had been accustomed to reverence, were weighty and persuasive, and not only restrained them from those violent excesses which they meditated, but prevailed¹¹ [with] them to accompany their admiral for¹² some time longer.

9) wenn sie . . . bereiteten. 10) bei. 11) vermochte or bewog sie. 12) noch eine Zeitlang.

III.

As they proceeded, the indications of approaching land seemed to be more certain, and excited hope in proportion. The birds began to appear in flocks¹ flying towards [the] south-west. Columbus, imitating the Portuguese navigators, who had been guided in several of their discoveries by the motion² of birds, altered his course from due³ west towards that quarter⁴ whither they pointed their flight.² But, after holding on for several days in this new direction without [any] better success than formerly, having seen no object during thirty days but the sea and the sky, the hopes of his companions subsided⁵ faster than they had risen; their fears revived⁶ with additional force;⁶ impatience,⁷ rage and despair appeared in every countenance. All sense of subordination was lost. The officers, who had hitherto concurred⁸ with Columbus in opinion,⁸ and supported his authority, now took part with the private men; they assembled⁹ tumultuously on the deck, expostulated¹⁰ with their commander, mingled threats with their expostulations, and required him instantly to tack¹¹ about and return to Europe.

Columbus perceived that it would be of no¹² avail to have recourse¹³ to any of his former arts, which,

1) Scharen. 2) Flug, m. 3) vom direkten Westen. 4) Richtung. 5) sanken or schwanden. 6) wurden immer stärker. 7) Article. — 8) übereinstimmen. 9) refl. v. 10) stritten. 11) umlegen. 12) unnütz. 13) seine Zuflucht zu nehmen zu einer . . .

having been tried so often had lost their effect; and that it was impossible to rekindle any zeal for the success of the expedition among men in whose breasts fear had extinguished every generous sentiment. He saw that it was no less¹⁴ vain to think of employing either gentle or severe measures to quell a mutiny so general and so violent. It was necessary, on all these accounts,¹⁵ to soothe passions which he could no longer command, and to give way to a torrent too impetuous to be¹⁶ checked. He promised solemnly to his men that he would comply [with] their request, provided they would accompany him and obey his command [for] three days longer, and if, during that time, land were not discovered, he would then abandon¹⁷ the enterprise, and direct his course towards Spain.

14) ebenso vergeblich. 15) aus allen diesen Gründen. 16) als daß ihm gesteuert werden konnte. 17) aufgeben.

IV.

Enraged as¹ the sailors were, and impatient to turn their faces again towards their native country, this proposition did not appear to them unreasonable; nor² did Columbus hazard much in confining³ himself to a term so short. The presages of discovering land were now so numerous and promising, that he deemed them infallible. For⁴ some days the sounding line reached the bottom, and the soil which it brought up, indicated land⁵ to be⁵ at no great distance. The flocks of birds increased, and were composed⁶ not only of sea-fowl,⁷ but of such land-birds as could not be supposed to fly far from the shore. The crew of the Pinta observed a cane floating, which seemed to have been newly cut, and likewise a piece of timber artificially carved. The sailors on board the Nina took up⁸ the branch of a tree with red berries perfectly fresh. The clouds around the setting sun assumed a new appearance; the air was more mild and warm, and during night the wind became unequal and variable.

From all these symptoms Columbus was so confident

1) So wütend auch ... 2) auch riskierte C. nicht viel. 3) indem er sich ... beschränkte. 4) während einiger Tage or einige Tage lang. 5) daß das Land nicht ferne war. 6) bestanden ... aus. 7) Seevögel, plur. 8) fishten .. auf.

of being near land, that on the evening of the eleventh of October, after public prayers for success, he ordered the sails to be furled⁹, and the ships to lie to, keeping¹⁰ strict watch, lest they should be driven ashore¹¹ in the night. During this interval of suspense¹² and expectation, no man shut his eyes, all kept¹³ upon deck; gazing intently towards that quarter were they expected to discover the land which had so long been the object of their wishes.

9) Use the Infinit. active, einzuziehen. 10) und genau acht zu geben. 11) ans Ufer. 12) Ungewißheit. 13) blieben.

V.

About two hours before midnight, Columbus, standing on the forecandle, observed a light at a distance, and privately pointed it out to Pedro Gutierrez, a page of the queen's wardrobe. Gutierrez perceived it, and calling [to] Salcedo, comptroller of the fleet, all three saw it in motion, as if it were carried from place to place. A little after midnight, the joyful sound [of] *land! land!* was heard from the *Pinta*, which kept¹ always ahead¹ of the other ships. But having been so often deceived by fallacious appearances, every man was now become slow² of belief, and waited in all the anguish of uncertainty and impatience for³ the return of day.

As soon as the morning dawned, all doubts and fears were dispelled. From every ship an island was seen⁴ about two leagues to the north, whose flat and verdant fields, well stored with wood, and watered with many rivulets, presented the aspect⁵ of a delightful country. The crew of the *Pinta* instantly began the *Te Deum*, as a hymn⁶ of thanksgiving⁶ to God, and were joined⁷ by those of the other ships with tears of joy and transports of congratulation. This office of gratitude to Heaven was⁸ followed by an act of justice to their commander. They threw themselves at⁹ the feet of Columbus with feelings of self-condemnation, mingled with reverence. They implored him to pardon their ignorance, incredulity and insolence, which had caused him so much unnecessary disquiet, and had so often obstructed the

1) vorausgesetzt (dat.). 2) schwergläubig. 3) auf. 4) sah man eine Insel. 5) Anblick, m. 6) ein Loblied. 7) in welches die ... einstimmen. 8) Diesem Gottesdienst (dat.) ... folgte ein Akt ... 9) zu.

prosecution of his well-concerted plan; and passing, in the warmth of their admiration, from one extreme to another, they now pronounced¹⁰ the man whom they had so lately reviled and threatened, to be¹¹ a person inspired by Heaven with sagacity and fortitude more¹¹ than human,¹¹ in order to¹² accomplish a design so far beyond¹² the ideas and conception of all former ages.

As soon as the sun arose, all their boats were manned¹³ and armed. They rowed towards the island with [their] colours¹⁴ displayed, with warlike music and other martial pomp. As they approached the coast,¹⁵ they saw it covered with a multitude of people, whom the novelty of the spectacle had drawn together, whose attitudes and gestures expressed wonder¹⁶ and astonishment at¹⁷ the strange objects which presented themselves to their view.

10) erklärten sie nun. 11) für einen vom Himmel mit übermenschlicher Verstandesschärfe und Seelenstärke begabten Mann. 12) daß er einen Plan ausführen konnte, der die ... übertraf. 13) bemannt. — 14) Fahnen. 15) Put the dative. 16) Verwunderung. 17) über.

VI.

Columbus was the first European who set foot¹ on the new world which he had discovered. He landed in a rich dress, and with a naked² sword in his hand. His men followed, and, kneeling down, they all kissed the ground which they had so long desired to see. They next³ erected a crucifix, and prostrating themselves before it, returned thanks to God for⁴ conducting their voyage to such a happy issue. They then took solemn possession of the country for the Crown of Castile and Leon, with all the formalities which the Portuguese⁵ were accustomed to observe in acts of this kind in their new discoveries.

The Spaniards, while thus employed,⁶ were⁶ surrounded by many of the natives, who gazed in silent admiration upon actions which they could not comprehend, and of which⁷ they could not foresee the consequences. The dress of the Spaniards, the whiteness of their skins, their beards, their arms, appeared strange and surprising. The vast machines in which they had traversed the ocean, that seemed to move upon the waters with wings,

1) der seinen Fuß ... setzte. 2) bloß. 3) Sie errichteten sodann. 4) dafür, daß er ... geführt hatte. 5) Portugiesen. 6) Während die Sp. so beschäftigt, wurden sie. 7) wovon.

and uttered a dreadful sound resembling thunder, accompanied with lightning and smoke, struck⁸ them with such terror that they began to respect their new guests as a superior order of beings, and concluded they were children of the sun, who had descended to visit the earth.

The Europeans were hardly less amazed at the scene now⁹ before them. Every herb, and shrub, and tree was different from those which flourished in Europe. The soil seemed to be rich, but bore few marks of cultivation. The climate, even to the Spaniards, felt warm, though extremely delightful. The inhabitants appeared in the simple innocence of nature. Their black hair, long and uncurled, floated upon their shoulders, or was bound in tresses on the head. They had no beards, and their bodies¹⁰ were perfectly smooth. Their complexion was of a dusky copper colour, their features singular rather than disagreeable, their aspect¹¹ gentle and timid. Though not tall, they were well-shaped and active. Their faces¹⁰ and several parts of their bodies¹⁰ were fantastically painted with glaring colours. They were shy at first through fear, but soon became familiar with the Spaniards, and with transports of joy received from them hawk-bells, glass beads, or other baubles; in return for which they gave such provisions as¹² they had, and some cotton yarn, the only commodity of value which they could produce.

Towards evening, Columbus returned to his ship, accompanied by many of the islanders¹³ in their boats, which they called canoes, and though rudely formed out of the trunk of a single tree, they rowed them with surprising dexterity. Thus in¹⁴ the first interview between the habitants of the new and old worlds¹⁰ every thing was conducted amicably and to their mutual satisfaction. The former, enlightened and ambitious, formed¹⁵ already vast ideas with respect to the advantages which they might derive from the regions that began to open¹⁶ to their view. The latter, simple and undiscerning, had no foresight of the calamities and desolation which were approaching¹⁵ their country!

Robertson.

8) schloßte ihnen einen solchen Schrecken ein. 9) das Schauspiel, das jetzt vor ihnen lag. 10) Use the singular. 11) Aussehen. 12) wie sie sie gerade hatten. 13) Inselaner. 14) bei. 15) machten. 16) bevorstanden (dat.).

9.

Columbus' first Return to Europe.

The voyage was prosperous till the fourteenth of February, and he had advanced near five hundred leagues across the Atlantic ocean, when the wind began to rise, and continued to blow with increasing rage, which terminated in a furious hurricane. Every thing¹ that the naval skill and experience of Columbus could devise, was employed in order to save the ships. But it was impossible to withstand the violence² of the storm, and, as they were still far from any land, destruction³ seemed inevitable. The sailors had recourse to prayers to (the) Almighty God, to the invocation of Saints, to vows and charms, to every thing that religion dictates or superstition suggests to the affrighted mind of man. No prospect of deliverance appearing, they abandoned themselves to despair, and expected every moment to be swallowed up in the waves.

Besides the passions which naturally agitate and alarm the human mind in such awful situations, when certain death, in one of his most terrible forms, is before it, Columbus had to endure feelings⁴ of distress peculiar to himself.⁴ He dreaded that all knowledge of the amazing discoveries which he had made, was now to perish; mankind were to be deprived of every benefit that might have been⁵ derived from the happy success of his schemes, and his own name would descend to posterity as that of a rash, deluded adventurer, instead of being transmitted with the honour due⁶ to the author and conductor of the most noble enterprise that had ever been undertaken.

These reflections extinguished all sense of his own personal danger. Less affected⁷ with the loss of life, than solicitous to preserve the memory of⁸ what he had attempted and achieved, he retired to his cabin, and wrote, upon parchment, a short account of the voyage which he had made, of the course which he had taken, of the situation and riches of the countries which he had discovered, and of the colony that he had left there.

1) Alles was. 2) Use the dat. 3) der Untergang. 4) eigenthümliche Gefühle. 5) die von . . . hätte abgeleitet werden können. 6) welche dem . . . gebührt. 7) Weniger beunruhigt um. 8) von dem was.

Having wrapped up this in an oiled⁹ cloth, which he inclose in a cake of wax, he put it into a cask carefully stopped up, and threw it into the sea, in hopes that some fortunate accident might preserve a deposit of so much importance to¹⁰ the world. At length Providence interposed¹¹ to save a life reserved for other services. The wind abated,¹² the sea became calm, and on the evening of the fifteenth, Columbus and his companions discovered land. They found it¹³ to be St. Mary, one of the Azores.

Robertson.

9) in ein Wachstuch. 10) für. 11) legte sich ins Mittel. 12) refl. v. legte sich. 13) Sie fanden, daß es St. Marie war; see Gram. L. 44, § 12.

10.

Life and Writings of Oliver Goldsmith.

I.

Oliver Goldsmith was a native of Ireland, and was born on the 10th of November, 1728. Two villages claim the honour of having given him birth; Pallas, in the county of Longford, and Elphin in the county of Roscommon. The former is named as the place in the epitaph by Dr. Johnson, inscribed on his monument in Westminster Abbey, but later investigations have decided in favour of Elphin.

He was the second son of the Rev. C. Goldsmith, a clergyman of the established church, but without any patrimony. He was equally distinguished for his literary attainments and for his benevolence. His family consisted of five sons and two daughters, and from this little world at home, Goldsmith has drawn many of his domestic scenes, both¹ whimsical and¹ touching; his father's fireside furnished many of the family scenes of the Vicar of Wakefield, and it is said that the learned simplicity and amiable peculiarities of that worthy divine have been happily illustrated² in the character of Dr. Primrose.

After being instructed in the classics,³ to qualify him for the University, on the 11th of June 1744, Goldsmith, then fifteen years of age, was placed⁴ in Trinity College, Dublin, and was admitted to the degree⁵ of Master of

1) both — and, *conj.* sowohl — als. 2) gezeichnet, geschildert. — 3) Klassiker. 4) aufgenommen. 5) zu der Magisterwürde.

Arts in February 1749. After various consultations respecting his future pursuits,⁶ it was at last determined that he should study physic, and accordingly he proceeded to Edinburgh in 1752, and there studied medicine under the professors of that university.

After he had attended some courses of lectures,⁷ it was thought⁸ advisable that he should complete his medical studies at the university of Leyden, then celebrated as a great medical school; and being from his benevolent⁹ disposition involved in difficulties, augmented by an engagement to pay a considerable sum for a fellow student, he was obliged to leave Scotland precipitately. In the beginning of 1754, he arrived at Leith, where he was arrested at the suit¹⁰ of a tailor in Edinburgh, to whom he had given security for his friend. By the good offices of Lachlan Maclane, Esq.¹¹ and Dr. Sleigh, then in college, he was delivered out of the hands of the bailiff, and took his passage, on board¹² a Dutch ship to Rotterdam, from whence, after a short stay, he proceeded to Leyden.

6) Lebensberuf, sing. 7) Vorlesungen. 8) hielt man es für ratsam. 9) durch seine wohlthollende Gefinnung or Gutmütigkeit. 10) auf die Klage. 11) Herrn, before the name. 12) auf einem holländischen Schiff.

II.

His passion¹ for travel, which had long lain dormant, was now thoroughly awakened; he visited great part of Flanders, and after passing some time at Strasburg and Louvain, where he took the degree of M. B.,² he accompanied an English gentleman to Berne and Geneva. He travelled on foot during the greatest part of his tour, having left England with very little money. Being capable of sustaining fatigue, and not easily terrified at danger he became enthusiastically fond of visiting different countries. He had some knowledge of French and of music, and played tolerably well on the German flute; which from an amusement, became at times³ the means of subsistence. His learning procured him a hospitable reception at most of the religious houses, and his music made him welcome to the peasants of Flanders, and other parts of Germany. "Whenever I approached," he

1) Reiselust, f. 2) als Baccalaureus der Medicin. 3) zeitweise.

said, "a peasant's house towards night-fall,⁴ I played one of my most merry tunes, and that procured me not only a lodging, but subsistence for the next day; but in truth, I must own, whenever I attempted to entertain persons of a higher rank, they always thought my performances⁵ odious, and never made any return for my endeavour to please them.

On his arrival at Geneva,⁶ he was recommended as a travelling tutor to a young man to whom a considerable sum of money had been left by his uncle, a pawnbroker, near Holborn. During Goldsmith's continuance⁷ in Switzerland, he assiduously cultivated his poetical talents, of which he had given some proof while⁸ at the college of Edinburgh. It was from hence he sent the first sketch of his delightful poem, "The Traveller," to his brother, the clergyman in Ireland, who lived with an amiable wife on⁹ an income of only 40 L. a year. From Geneva, Goldsmith and his pupil visited the South of France, where the young man, upon some disagreement with his preceptor, paid him the small part of his salary which was due,¹⁰ and embarked at Marseilles for England.

Our wanderer was left once more on the world¹¹ at large. He set out from hence on foot, and in that manner travelled through various districts of France. He finally pursued his journey into Italy, visiting Venice, Verona, Florence, and other celebrated places. At Padua where he stayed six months, he is said¹² to have taken a medical degree. In Italy Goldsmith found his talent for (zur) music almost useless, for every peasant was a better musician than himself; but his skill¹³ for disputation still served his purpose, and the religious¹⁴ establishments were equally hospitable. At length, his curiosity being fully gratified, he resolved to trace¹⁵ his steps towards his native home. He returned through France, as the shorter route and as affording greater facilities to a pedestrian. He was lodged and entertained as formerly, sometimes at religious and learned establishments, and sometimes at the cottages of the peasantry,¹⁶ and thus, with [the]

4) gegen Einbruch der Nacht. 5) mein Spiel, sing. 6) Genf. — 7) Aufenthalt, m. 8) add: he was. 9) von. 10) verfallen, fällig. 11) in der weiten Welt. 12) soll er sein Doctor-Examen gemacht haben. 13) seine Geschicklichkeit im Disputieren. 14) rel. establ. = Klöster. — 15) zu lenken. 16) der Bauern.

aid of his philosophy and his flute, he disputed¹⁷ and piped his way homewards.

17) disputierte und flötete.

III.

He arrived at Dover in the beginning of the winter of 1756. His whole stock¹ of cash could not defray the expense of the ordinary conveyance, and neither flute nor logic could help him to a supper or a bed. He however contrived² to reach London in safety, where, to use his own words, he found himself "without friends, money, or impudence;" his mind, too, was filled with the gloomiest apprehensions. By the kind recommendation of Dr. Radcliffe, one of his tutors³ at Trinity College, he obtained a situation as assistant⁴ to a boarding-school, or academy. But to⁵ a person of his temper and habits, this employment was peculiarly distasteful.⁶

How long he remained in this situation, is not known, but he left it to take that of assistant⁷ to a chemist, near Fish Street Hill. While he was here, he discovered that his old friend and fellow-student, Dr. Sleigh, was in London, and he soon found him out. By his advice and friendly assistance, Goldsmith commenced medical⁸ practitioner at Bankside, in Southwark, whence he afterwards removed⁸ to the Temple. His practice was not very productive; he was obliged to have recourse also to his pen, and thus, as he says, "with very little practice as a physician, and very little reputation as a poet, I made a shift¹⁰ to live."

A rapid change now took place in his circumstances, in consequence of the increased patronage¹¹ of the booksellers. The late Mr. Newberry, who gave encouragement to men of literary abilities, became his patron,¹² and introduced him as one of the writers in the Public Ledger, in which his "*Citizen of the World*," originally appeared, under the title [of] *Chinese Letters*. At this time also he wrote occasionally for the British Magazine and Critical Review, conducted¹³ by Dr. Smollet, from which connexion Goldsmith is said¹⁴ to have derived im-

1) Kassen-Vorrat. 2) brachte es dahin. 3) Lehrer. 4) Hilfslehrer an . . . 5) einem Manne von. 6) zuwider. 7) eines Assistenten bei einem Chemiker. 8) als praktischer Arzt. 9) zog. 10) half ich mir durchs Leben, or brachte ich mich durch. 11) Theilnahme, or Gunst, f. 12) Gönner. 13) geleitet or redigiert. 14) soll . . . gezogen haben.

portant advantages. The liberal¹⁵ soul of Smollet made him the¹⁶ friend of every author in distress; and he warmly interested himself in Goldsmith's success. He not only recommended him to the patronage of the most eminent booksellers, but introduced him to the notice of the first literary characters; but the most remarkable in point of¹⁷ eminence to whom he was introduced at this time, was Dr. Johnson, with whom he now regularly associated, either from similarity of dispositions or pursuits.

15) freigebig, edel. 16) See Gram. Less. 48, 3. — 17) in Hinsicht auf das Talent.

IV.

He now removed to Wine Office Court, in Fleet Street, where he occupied genteel apartments, received visits of ceremony, and sometimes gave entertainments to his literary friends. But his improvidence and generosity soon produced embarrassments in his circumstances, notwithstanding the sums which he received for his writings, which ought¹ to have more than sufficed to keep him out of debt; and we find him under arrest² for his rent,³ just as he was finishing for the press his "Vicar of Wakefield". In this dilemma he sent for his friend Johnson, who sold the work to Mr. Newberry for sixty pounds, and paid his landlady.

This price was certainly little for a work of such merit, but the author's name was not then well known to the public, and the purchaser took the whole risk on himself, by paying the money down.⁴ It was not till after the publication of his "Traveller," which met with great success, that Mr. Newberry ventured to put the "Vicar of Wakefield" to the press, and he then reaped the twofold advantage, arising from the intrinsic merit of the work, and the rising character⁵ of its author.

After the sale of this novel, Goldsmith worked assiduously for Mr. Newberry. He revised and corrected several publications; among others: "the Art of Poetry," a "Life of Beau Nash," and a republication⁶ of his own letters, originally contributed to the Public Ledger, under the title of "The Citizen of the World," a work entitled⁷

1) hätten . . . genügend sein sollen. 2) in Verhaft. 3) Mietzins, m.
4) to pay down bar auszahlen. 5) und dem steigenden Ansehen. —
6) eine neue Ausgabe. 7) welcher Anspruch hat auf (acc.).

to the praise of supereminent merit, and which is still⁸ ranked among the classical productions of the British muse. He also published, for his own benefit, a selection of all his fugitive pieces, in one volume, under the title of "Essays." Goldsmith about this time fixed his⁹ abode in the Temple, where he ever after resided.

8) daß noch seinen Rang behauptet. 9) nahm seine Wohnung.

V.

In the number of literary friends who visited him there, and with whom he now associated,¹ were Burke, Fox, Johnson, Percy, Reynolds, Garrick, Colman, Boswell, Beauclerk, with the Lords Nugent and Charlemont, and with whom he formed the celebrated literary club, so renowned at the time, and so often mentioned in the "Life of Johnson." He now published his "History of England in a series of Letters from a Nobleman to his Son." This little work was at first published anonymously, and was very generally attributed to Lord Littleton, who then held² some rank in the world of letters,³ from its easy elegance of language. That it was really the production of Goldsmith, was soon afterwards known, and few works have had a more extensive circulation.

The fame he had now acquired as a critic, novelist, and a poet, prompted him to try his talent in the drama, and he produced the "Good-natured Man," at Covent-Garden Theatre. Dr. Johnson wrote the prologue; but it was withdrawn⁴ after nine representations. He next published a series of histories for the instruction of young readers; these were his "History of England," in four volumes; the "History of Rome," in two volumes; and the "History of Greece," in two volumes. For the "History of England," he received from his bookseller £ 500. These historical compilations possess all the ease,⁵ grace, and simplicity peculiar to the general style of their author, and are admirably well calculated to attract young readers by the graces⁶ of composition. The success they⁷ met with at their first appearance, has not yet abated,⁸ and they are still considered as the best historical works for the use of youth.

1) sich verband. 2) einen gewissen Rang einnahm. 3) in der literarischen Welt. 4) zurückgezogen. 5) Leichtigkeit. 6) durch die Anmut des Stils. 7) den sie fanden. 8) nachgelassen.

His next work was the poem of "The Deserted Village." Previous⁹ to its publication, the bookseller, who had bargained for the manuscript, gave him a note for one hundred guineas. Having mentioned this soon after to some of his friends, one of them remarked that it was a very great sum for so short a performance.¹⁰ "In truth," said Goldsmith, "I think so too; it is much more than the honest man can afford, or the piece is worth; I have not been easy¹¹ since I received it; I will, therefore, go back and return him his note." This he actually did, and left it entirely to the bookseller to pay him according to the profits¹² produced by the sale of the piece; which, however, turned out¹³ very considerable.

9) vor. 10) Arbeit. 11) ruhig. 12) Gewinn, sing. m. 13) ausfiel.

VI.

Not discouraged by the cold reception his first play had met with, he resolved to try a second; and notwithstanding the predictions of a total failure, his drama, "She Stoops to Conquer; or, the Mistakes of a Night," met with universal applause, and still keeps possession of the stage. It was with the greatest difficulty that Colman, the manager of Covent-Garden Theatre, could be got¹ to consent to put² the piece in rehearsal,² so confident was he that it would not be successful. On the first night of the performance, Goldsmith did not come to the house till towards the close of the representation, having rambled in St. James' Park, to ruminate on the probable fate of his piece, and even then, he was prevailed on with difficulty, by a friend, to repair to the theatre.

He had scarcely entered the passage that leads to the stage, when his ears were shocked by a hiss. Such was our poor author's tremor and agitation, that, running up to the manager, he exclaimed: "What's that? what's that?" "Pshaw, doctor," replied Colman, in a sarcastic tone, "don't be terrified at squibs, when we have been sitting these two hours upon a barrel³ of gunpowder." Goldsmith's pride was so mortified by his remark, that the friendship which had before subsisted⁴ between him and the manager, was from that moment dissolved.

1) dazu gebracht werden. 2) das Stück einstudieren zu lassen. — 3) auf einem Pulverfaß. 4) bestanden.

He next published "The History of the Earth and Animated Nature," in the beginning of 1774, on⁵ which he had been engaged⁶ about four years. The numerous editions through which it has passed, attest, that, if not a profound, it is at least an amusing and useful work. This finally closed the literary labours of Goldsmith. During the progress of this undertaking, he is said to have received from the publisher £ 850 of⁷ copy-money.

5) mit. 6) beschäftigt. 7) an Honorar.

VII.

Notwithstanding the great success of his productions, by some of which he cleared¹ £ 1800 in one year, his circumstances were not in a prosperous situation, partly owing² to the liberality of his disposition, and partly to² a habit of gaming, of the arts of which he knew very little, and thus became the prey of those who took advantage of his simplicity. Before his death he published the prospectus of a Universal Dictionary of Arts and Sciences; and, as his literary friends, Sir Joshua Reynolds, Dr. Johnson, Mr. Beauclerk, Mr. Garrick, and others, had undertaken to furnish him [with] articles upon different subjects, he entertained the most sanguine expectations from it. The undertaking however, did not meet³ with that encouragement from the booksellers which he had imagined it would receive, and he found himself obliged to abandon the design. It is supposed that he had fondly⁴ promised himself relief from his pecuniary difficulties by this scheme, and consequently his chagrin at the disappointment was the more keenly felt. He frequently lamented the circumstance to his friends, and there is little doubt that it contributed, with other vexations, to aggravate the disease which ended in his dissolution.

Goldsmith had been for some years afflicted, at different times, with a violent complaint. The attacks of this disease had latterly become more frequent and violent; and these, combined with anxiety of mind on the subject of his accumulating debts, embittered his days, and brought on⁵ almost habitual despondency. In

1) einnahm. 2) wegen. 3) fand nicht. 4) thörichterweise. 5) führte herbei.

this unhappy condition he was attacked by a nervous fever, which terminated in⁶ his death, on the 4th of April, 1774, in the forty-fifth year of his age. For some reasons, which have never been explained, his remains were privately⁷ interred in the Temple burying-ground, attended only by a few select friends. A short time afterwards, however, a monument was erected, by subscription, in Poets' Corner, in Westminster Abbey, between those of Gay and the duke of Argyle, and the statuary is admitted⁸ to have produced a good likeness⁹ of our author.

6) endigte mit. 7) heimlich. 8) man nimmt an, daß der Bildhauer u. 9) eine große Ähnlichkeit.

Dramatic Extract.

Charles the XII.

An historical Comedy, in two Acts.

Characters.¹

Charles XII, King of Sweden.

Colonel Reichel.

Gustavus de Mervelt.

Major Vanberg, under the name of Firmann.

Adam Brock, a wealthy farmer in the Island of Rugen.

Triptolemus Muddlewerk, Burgomaster of Circow.

Ulrica, daughter of Vanberg.

Eudiga, daughter of Adam Brock.

First and Second Officer, Sentinel etc.

Act I.

Scene I. — The Court-Yard of a small Village Inn in the Island of Rugen, Swedish Pomerania. Farm-House.

²Enter ¹*Ulrica*, from the inn.

Ulr. (*As she enters.*) Yes, Sir, certainly! in five minutes! What a hurry this stranger is in;² and how sharply he speaks, too; he seems a military man³ — some officer, I suppose, to whom the word of command is

1) Personen. 2) put: in what hurry etc. 3) ein Militär.

habitual. Should he know Gustavus! But, alas, why do I permit myself to think of him? Forget not, Ulrica, that Major Vanberg is now but a humble village inn-keeper, and that his daughter may¹ no longer pretend to the hand of one of his Majesty's pages.

*(Adam Brock sings without.)*²

Merry, merry, merry!

Ever merry be;

Never was there merry man,

But honest, too, was he.

Ulr. Ah! here comes our kind and eccentric friend and neighbour, Adam Brock.

Enter Adam Brock, from his house.

Brock. Ah! what, there you are, eh? Bless³ your nice little smiling face! it does⁴ one's heart good⁴ to look at you.

Ulr. I cannot help smiling, when I see you, Mr. Brock — your good humour is infectious; and fortunately for us, I am sure; for this village would be but a dreary place to dwell in, if you were to leave it.

Brock. Oh, really! I don't know — I like to see people merry, and therefore try to make them so, for my⁵ own sake. My life, Ma'mzelle Ulrica, has been one long hearty laugh, and so was my father's before me. "Adam, you grinning young dog!" he used to say to me — "You are your father's boy to a chuckle."⁶ Laughter, my lad, is the distinguishing characteristic of the human species; but remember that, if you would always have a smile on your own countenance, you must never be guilty of an act that will banish one from your neighbour's."

Ulr. And you have well observed his excellent admonition, by striving to make every one happy around you. I am sure, my poor father and I can never repay the obligations which — —

Brock (Laughing). Ho, ho, ho! obligations! Now what in all the world do you call obligations? Are not your father and I foster-brothers? And wasn't his father the best friend I ever had? Now, don't talk such nonsense.

1) darf nicht mehr Anspruch machen auf (Acc.). 2) draußen. — 3) Gott segne. 4) Es thut einem im Herzen wohl. 5) um meiner selbst willen. 6) bis auf das Röcheln.

But where is your father? I've news you'll both be glad to hear: — my boy, Fred,¹ is made a sergeant!² He just galloped over from the camp, this morning, to say as much, and was off again like an arrow; so I want you two to come over to us, and spend a merry day.

Ulr. I should be delighted. But we have an officer in the house, who arrived late last night; — he has asked for his bill, however; therefore — —

Brock. Well, but what then? If he has nothing better to do, bring him with you — the more guests, the merrier! If he isn't proud, I'm sure I am not. It makes no difference to Adam Brock whether an honest man be a king or a cobbler! If he likes a hearty laugh, and a hearty welcome, I'd joke and drink a bottle with one just as willingly as with the other.

Ulr. But then, my father — it might not be safe for him to be long in company with this stranger.

Brock. Oh! there's no danger; but, perhaps, it may be as well not to risk it. However, here he comes, he can speak for himself.

Ulr. Then I'll leave you to make your own arrangements. I shall be only too happy to spend the day with Eudiga.

(*Exit Ulrica.*)

Enter *Major Vanberg*, from the inn.

Brock. Friend Firman, my boy is made² a sergeant.

Van. I wish³ you joy, Brock.

Brock. Well, I dare say, you do; but nobody would think it, to hear⁴ you say so. I wish I could see you a little more cheerful, man! Come, I want you⁵ to go home with me, and drink a glass of wine to Fred's health. Ulrica tells me you've an officer in the house, and I said at first: bring him with you; but — —

Van. Not for the world! I've avoided him till now; — his presence alarms me. I was in hopes this sequestered spot might have escaped such visitors. Charles the Twelfth is in the Island, and this man may be one of his suite. Should I be discovered by any accident, the severity of the king is notorious.

Brock. Fear nothing, man; the king himself has never seen you since he was seventeen; most of the

1) Friß. 2) ist Sergeant geworden. 3) ich gratuliere Ihnen or ich wünsche Ihnen Glück. 4) wenn man sie hört. 5) ich wünsche, daß Sie . .

officers here are French, belonging to Ville-Longue's regiment; and I defy¹ your oldest acquaintance to know¹ you in this disguise. Besides, who the deuce² would dream of your daring to keep a house of public entertainment? That's why I urged your taking it! No, no, put a bold face on the matter, and a merry one, too. Laugh! there's nothing like it! Laugh, and nobody will suspect you.

Van. Ay; 'tis an easy thing to say: laugh, friend Brock.

Brock. And an easy thing to do, friend Firmann, when a man's conscience is clear! You know you are innocent of the crime laid to your charge, and you hope, one of these days, to be able to prove it. Why, then, laugh. Upon my word! you must laugh — you shall laugh. Come with me, and my mad-cap of a girl shall see if she can't make you laugh.

Van. (*Alarmed.*) She doesn't know my story!

Brock. Oh, bless you! no, no, no. I'm close³ as wax.

Van. Do not think it is for myself I fear, it is for you, my kind, my generous friend, I tremble! when I think of the danger to which I have exposed you.

Brock. Then why do you think of it? I never do. What good⁴ would they get by sending old Adam Brock out of the world a few years before his time? Ho, ho, ho! how I should laugh to catch them at it!

(*Exeunt up the steps into his house.*)

Scene II. — A Room in the Inn.

Enter *Charles XII.*, with a paper in his hand.

Charles. These people are very poor, but very honest: one florin for supper, lodging, and breakfast. Well — I must pay no more; for, were I only to double the sum, it would excite their suspicion; and a discovery of my rank would frustrate my plan. Come!⁵ the senate cannot accuse me of extravagance this time. (*Sits at the table and writes.*) But where is this boy, now, to carry my despatches?

Enter *Ulrica.*

Ulr. (*Aside.*) If without exciting suspicion, I could obtain news of Gustavus — I have [a] great mind to ask the question; I will too. (*Advances.*) Sir!

1) Ich wette, daß Ihr . . . Sie nicht kennt. 2) wer zum Henker. 3) verschwiegen wie. 4) was für einen Nutzen. 5) wahrlich.

Charles. Well; what do you want, my good girl?

Ulr. I beg your pardon, Sir, but may I ask you a question?

Charles. Yes, if it's a short one.

Ulr. You are an officer?

Charles. I am.

Ulr. And a Swede?

Charles. I thank Heaven!

Ulr. Were you ever at Stockholm, Sir?

Charles. (*Smiling.*) Why, yes; but it is now more than fifteen years ago; and my friends there are rather impatient, I believe, to see me again. (*Rising.*)

Ulr. (*With hesitation.*) Then, Sir, what I wished to ask you, is: did you happen¹ to know there a gentleman named Gustavus?

Charles. Gustavus! I have known many. There was one of that name in my family — he died in the moment of victory! I have endeavoured to live like him; — Heaven may, perhaps, grant me as glorious a death! (*Recovering himself.*) Gustavus what? has he no other name?

Ulr. (*Hesitating.*) Gustavus de Mervelt.

Charles. Hah! humph! de Mervelt — an aid-de-camp² to the king.

Ulr. Indeed, Sir! He was but (*nur*) a page, when I knew him.

Charles. And how came you to know him, young woman, eh? Come, it's my turn³ now to ask questions. Were you ever at Stockholm?

Ulr. Sir, I — (*Aside.*) I must be cautious. (*Aloud.*) Once, with my father, Sir.

Charles. And how came a king's page in company with an innkeeper's daughter?

Ulr. It was the festival⁴ of St. John, Sir, and he danced with me in the park.

Charles. Humph! (*Aside.*) These young rascals of pages! And have you never seen him since?

Ulr. Alas! no, Sir.

Charles. By that sigh, I presume you would wish to see him?

Ulr. Oh! very much indeed, Sir.

1) haben Sie vielleicht . . . gekannt? 2) ein Adjutant . . 3) es ist jetzt an mir. 4) das Johannisfest.

Charles. Do you love him?

Ulr. Sir!

Charles. Ah! I see you do. Silly young woman, what do you expect will be the end of this? Do you think he'll marry you? (*Ulrica looks indignantly.*) What does the girl stare for? He told you so,¹ I suppose, and you believed him. I tell you he won't; do you believe me?

Ulr. No, Sir, I do not believe you; and were Gustavus here, he would vindicate² his own honour and my confidence. I see you do not know him; I need trouble you no further. (*Exit Ulrica.*)

Charles. Upon my word!³ here's a little firebrand! I like her spirits⁴ — pity⁵ she's a girl! I'd have given her a commission⁶ on the spot. But this young spark Gustavus — I shall investigate this business. I made him my page, when he was only sixteen; he was with me four years in Germany, and won my esteem by his valour and integrity; he was promoted and sent home, previous to the battle of Pultawa; and, on his joining me twelve months ago at Stralsund, I made him my aid-de-camp, my secretary; but, if I find he has been practising⁷ on the simplicity of this poor girl — —

Enter Gustavus de Mervelt.

Charles. So, Sir, you are here at last — I have waited for you.

Gust. I beg Your Majesty's pardon; but — —

Charles. Hush! I would not be known — call me plain Sir; we may be overheard. Now, say on.

Gust. On the point of leaving Stralsund, I was recalled by the governor, who had received this despatch from Stockholm.

Charles. (*Taking it.*) Humph! You are the bearer, also, of a despatch from Stockholm for another person in this house?

Gust. I, Sir!

Charles. (*Sternly.*) Young man; bethink⁸ yourself, and answer me truly; under pain,⁹ Sir, of my displeasure, did you never make a promise of marriage to a young girl with whom you danced in the park of Stockholm on the festival of St. John?

1) daß. 2) rechtfertigen, retten. 3) Bei meinem Leben! 4) Ihr Selbstgefühl gefällt mir. 5) Schade, daß. 6) ein Offizierspatent. 7) to practise on, sündigen auf (Acc.), durch Kunstgriffe zu hintergehen suchen. 8) Besinnen Sie sich. 9) bei Strafe.

Gust. Never, Sir! I never even danced in the park on such an occasion.

Charles. Gustavus de Mervelt, I have never yet detected you¹ uttering a falsehood! Upon your honour, Sir, as a Swedish soldier, are you not acquainted with a young girl named Firmann, the daughter of the man who keeps this inn?

Gust. Upon my honour, no, Sir; this is the first time I was ever in the Island of Rugen. and, to my knowledge,² I never saw the person you mention, anywhere.

Charles. (*Kindly.*) Enough, enough, Gustavus. Some fellow has assumed a name which he thought might give lustre to his conquest in the eyes of a simple country girl. Now, what have we here?

(*Breaks open the despatch, and reads.*)

Gust. (*Aside.*) A strange circumstance!

Charles. Hah! what's this? (*Reads.*) "Certain information having been³ received that Charles Vanberg, formerly major of horse,⁴ and condemned by the senate, on suspicion of treason, to perpetual banishment, has repassed the frontiers, and is dwelling disguised in the Island of Rugen, I hasten to apprise⁵ Your Majesty of the fact, and" — So, so, so.

Gust. (*Aside.*) Vanberg! unfortunate! And I have borne this!

Charles. We have traitors amongst us, have we? Humph! do they forget John Patkul? Sit down, Sir, and write as I dictate.

Gust. (*Aside.*) Cruel task!

Charles. (*Dictating.*) "To the governors and burgo-masters of the Island and Principality of Rugen: we hereby offer the sum of 2000 crowns to any person who shall discover and apprehend Charles de Vanberg, a banished traitor, and deliver him into the hands of justice." So — have you finished? Give me the pen, to sign.

Gust. (*Aside.*) He is lost! and Ulrica, too. Is she with her hapless father?

Charles. A light, to seal these letters. (*Rises and exit.*)

Gust. Yes, Sir. (*Rings a small hand-bell.*)

1) daß Sie eine Lüge sagten. 2) meines Wissens. 3) da man benachrichtigt worden ist, daß. 4) Kavalerie-Major. 5) in Kenntniß zu setzen.

Enter *Ulrica*.

Ulr. Your pleasure, (Was beliebt?) Sir?

Gust. (Turning.) A light, my good girl, to — (seeing *Ulrica*.) Gracious powers!¹

Ulr. Gustavus!

Gust. For² your life, not a word!

Re-enter *Charles XII.*

Gust. (Aside.) You know me not — silence and courage, or we are lost. A taper — quick, young woman.

Charles. (To *Ulrica*, who is going.) Stay! come hither. If I spoke sharply to you just now, it was because I wished you well. Tell me, now, what sort of a person was the young gentleman of whom you spoke?

Ulr. (Aside.) I know not what to say!³

Charles. I mean, what sort of looking person?⁴ For instance — was he taller or shorter than my friend here?

Ulr. Nearly of his height, Sir.

Charles (Aside.) She doesn't know him — 'twas as I suspected, then. (Aloud.) He was a villain, my poor girl, and not Gustavus de Mervelt. Go, bring me a light, and forget the fellow as soon as you can.

(Exit *Ulrica*.)

Gust. (Aside.) Saved for the moment! — But what will become of them?⁵

Charles. (Sitting at the table.) Let a courier be despatched with these letters to Stralsund; this you will deliver yourself to the proper authorities⁶ at Bergen, and let⁷ copies be instantly forwarded to all the magistrates throughout the island; return to me here, but not a word to the inhabitants who I am.

Re-enter *Ulrica*, with a lighted taper.

Charles. (While sealing letters.) Is there not a person of the name of Brock in this neighbourhood?

Ulr. Yes, Sir, Adam Brock; that large farm is his, Sir, facing⁸ our house.

Charles. Good! I have some business with him.

Ulr. Shall I send and tell him so, Sir?

1) Um Gottes Willen. 2) bei. 3) was ich sagen soll. 4) wie er ausgefallen hat. 5) was wird aus ihnen werden? 6) Behörden, pl. — 6) Abschriften sollen . . geschickt werden. 8) gegenüber.

Charles. No; I will visit him myself. (*Rising, and giving the letters to Gustavus.*) Away, Sir, and remember my instructions. (*Exit Charles.*)

Gust. (*Returning.*) Ulrica! my beloved (*They embrace.*)¹ Your presence of mind has saved us for the instant — but where is your father?

Ulr. He keeps this inn, and is at this moment with that very² Adam Brock I have been speaking of.

Gust. He must flee instantly! before this order I bear shall be made public!³ — His retreat is discovered — a price set on his head — oh! Ulrica! after five years' separation, thus to meet! But I dare not stay.

Ulr. One moment; who is this man?

Gust. An officer of distinction, attached⁴ to the king. Fly both⁵ of you, but, wherever you go, remember Gustavus. (*Exeunt.*)

Scene III, Parlour at Adam Brock's.

Enter *Triptolemus Muddlewerk*.

Mud. Mr. Brock! Mr. Brock! where is he? poor simple man! he little imagines what's going forward! he does nothing but laugh, laugh all day long, and suffers his daughter to do just as she pleases; he will not laugh at the news I have to tell him, though, that's one comfort. How grateful the inhabitants of Circow ought to be for such an excellent burgomaster as Triptolemus Muddlewerk! Without my intelligence and activity, the poor creatures would never be aware⁶ of half their misfortunes.

Enter *Adam Brock*, with a bottle of wine.

Brock. Heyday! Mr. Burgomaster! what wind has blown you here? — What awful discovery has lifted your worshipful⁷ nose so high, and made your face as long as a Dutch nutcracker's.

Mud. Now that's a very rude speech, Mr. Brock, to make to a civil magistrate, particularly when he is interested⁸ solely on your account.

Brock. (*Aside.*) Oh, burn⁹ your interest! this meddling booby,¹⁰ now, will put me out¹⁰ of tune for the whole day.

1) sich umarmen, refl. v. 2) mit dem nämlichen. 3) bekannt. — 4) von dem Gefolge des K. 5) both of you, Beide. 6) kennen. 7) verehrungswürdig. 8) wenn es sich nur um Ihr Interesse handelt. 9) zum Fenster mit. 10) d. vorwichtige Einfaltspinsel wird mich . . . aus meiner guten Stimmung bringen.

Mud. And, as to a long face, Mr. Brock, you will please to remember I've got a very long head.

Brock. Yes; and ought to have long ears.

Mud. A burgomaster's, Mr. Brock, is no such easy situation as some folks may suppose: it requires great abilities, Mr. Brock, and, as if on purpose to put mine to the test,¹ things have gone on worse in the neighbourhood, since I've been in office, than ever before — now, that's very odd.

Brock. It would have been very odd if they hadn't.

Mud. What, when I'm so vigilant? — When there isn't a day passes that I don't discover some mystery, like Oedipus.

Brock. Mystery! you make a mystery of the paring of a turnip. There is not a pig killed in the parish but² you think its squeaking very extraordinary, nor a pudding boiled, that you don't see treason in the smoke.

Mud. To be sure; a pretty³ magistrate I should make³ if I didn't see a great deal more in things than they mean; now you don't see treason when it's before your eyes, like Julius Cæsar in the Capitol.

Brock. (*Aside.*) He doesn't suspect, surely. (*Aloud.*) Confound⁴ your ancient history, speak out at once, man — what's your bussines with me?

Mud. Your daughter, Mr. Brock —

Brock. Well, what of her?

Mud. Was seen walking with a soldier this morning in the wood, behind the village.

Brock. You don't say so! you can't mean it.

Mud. It's a fact; I saw them with my own eyes, like Antony and Cleopatra.

Brock. And do you know who the soldier was?

Mud. No; but I have my suspicions.

Brock. So⁵ have I; I strongly⁶ suspect that it was her brother; now, Mr. Mystery, what have you to say to that?

Mud. Her brother! humph! that's very odd; well, but if it was her brother, he brought a letter from Stralsund.

Brock. And suppose he did, what then?

1) auf die Probe stellen. 2) ohne daß Sie sein Grunzen für . . . halten. 3) ich wäre ein lauberer Bürgermeister. 4) der Henker hole. — 5) den habe ich auch. 6) ich vermute stark. 7) angenommen, es wäre der Fall.

Mud. Why, he dropped it; I picked it up; here it is: to Ma'mzelle Eudiga Brock, and it is a very suspicious paper.

Brock. Why! surely you havn't been impertinent enough to read it?

Mud. Impertinent! really, Mr. Brock, not read it! indeed, I have read it, though; and, I say, if you permit your daughter to receive letters from officers —

Brock. Stop, Mr. Burgomaster Muddlewerk! I must give you a good advice, before you go any further: — Busy yourself as you please¹ in such matters of state as² your superiors may be silly enough to trust³ in your hands, but leave the family affairs of Adam Brock to his own management, or, much as⁴ I respect the law and the court, there is an old Bohemian fashion of flinging magistrates who overstep their duty, out of the window, which I may one of these days be tempted to introduce into Pomerania. A word to so wise a personage as yourself, must, I'm sure, be enough; there is a window —

Mud. Mr. Brock, you shall answer⁵ for this. I —

Brock. And, by the by, there's a ditch under it that will be just very convenient.

Mud. Mr. Brock, you wouldn't dare —

Brock. It's not very deep; but there's mud enough to save bones from breaking, and so —

Mud. I wish you a good morning, Mr. Brock.

(Runs out.)

Brock. (Bursting into a loud laugh.) Ha! ha! he'll not venture⁶ over my threshold again for some time, I hope. What a fool I am to let that jackanapes⁷ put me out of temper! But there, ha! ha! It's all gone⁸ now. Here Eudy, Eudiga!

Enter *Eudiga*.

Eud. Here, father!

Brock. Have you lost a letter?

Eud. A letter? — no — stay — yes, I have, I have, indeed, dear father; have you found it?

Brock. That stupid goose, Muddlewerk, picked it up; here it is.

(Giving it.)

1) wie Sie wollen. 2) welche. 3) Ihnen anzuvertrauen. 4) so sehr ich auch . . . achte. 5) Rede stehen, sich verantworten. 6) refl. v. sich wagen. 7) diesen Affen or Gimpel. 8) fort or vorbei.

Eud. (*Embarrassed.*) Have you read it, father?

Brock. Not I; but that prying fool has read it! Eudy, he tells me it is written by an officer — take care, my girl, take care what you're about; I ask for no secrets, particularly as your brother was the bearer; but these young military sparks are ugly playthings for a girl of eighteen; their are like¹ their own fire-arms. Eudy, very bright and pretty to look at, but loaded with mischief, and they go off when you least expect it.

Eud. My dear father, it was my intention this very day to speak to you on the subject, as you will perceive by casting your eye over this note. (*Gives it.*)

Brock. Indeed! (*Reads.*) "Dearest Eudiga — I acknowledge the justice of your reproof, nor will I longer ask you to conceal the subject from your excellent parents." — Upon my word! the fellow doesn't write badly, whoever he is. "My only reason for wishing² to postpone the disclosure³ was the hope I entertain that a few days will put into my hands the papers necessary for the justification of your friends, and that I might therefore have some claim upon the esteem of your father to back⁴ my proposal." What does he mean by that, Eudy, eh? — And who is this Mr. — Mr.

Eud. Reichel; you have heard me speak of a young colonel, whom I have frequently met at my godmother's, at Stralsund.

Brock. Your godmother's! ah, there it is! that comes of having⁵ great people for godmothers. Eudy, Eudy, are you sure he means honourably by you?⁶ — Does he know you are only a farmer's daughter?

Eud. Yes, indeed, father.

Brock. And who are the friends for whom he is interested?

Eud. (*Confidentially.*) Major Vanberg and his daughter.

Brock. Major Vanberg! why, you little wiseacre,⁷ how came you to⁸ know anything about Major Vanberg?

Eud. Why, do you think, father, I cannot be trusted with a secret as well as yourself? — I am Ulrica's confidant, you are the Major's. Colonel Reichel has, I

1) sie gleichen. 2) warum ich wünschte. 3) die Eröffnung. 4) zu unterstützen. 5) davon or daher, daß mau vornehme Leute zu Patinnen hat. 6) daß er es ehrlich mit Dir meint. 7) Nasenweiß. 8) dazu, etwas v. Major B. zu wissen.

trust, obtained a proof of his innocence, and I have made the producing¹ it the condition on which he may claim my hand as a reward. — Will you refuse it him, father?

Brock. Refuse it! only let him² restore my old friend to honour and happiness, and my word for it! if he likes it, he shall marry me into the bargain. And so, young cunning girl, you know —

Eud. Everything. Unjustly banished and languishing for³ his native land, Major Vanberg wrote to his foster-brother, Adam Brock. Despising the danger that threatens all who harbour and protect an attainted⁴ person, my kind brave father listened but to the dictates of his heart, and furnished the poor exile with funds and disguises, restored his daughter to his arms, and established them in the little inn of his own village, the better⁵ to baffle all suspicion.

Brock. Oh! pooh! pooh! nonsense! your kind brave father has done nothing more than his duty towards the playmate of his childhood and the son of his benefactor. But, Eudy, my love, you've played a bold game here: if this Colonel Reichel should betray us all —

Eud. (*Reproachfully.*) Father!

Brock. Oh! oh! oh! yes, of course, he's perfect! I never knew a lover that wasn't. Well, I never did look on the dark side of a picture yet, while I could avoid it: and I won't begin at fifty-two; but I should like to see this Colonel Reichel. But, Eudy! if he makes us cry for anything but⁶ joy, I'll never forgive him.

Eud. If his duty will permit him to leave Stralsund but for a few hours, he has promised me to ride over to Circow.

Brock. Well, if he behaves well, you shan't go portionless⁷ to him, Eudy; Adam Brock can count crowns with this colonel, I warrant — (*Aside*) no thanks to the king, though,⁸ as I shall take the liberty of telling his Majesty, if ever he gives me an opportunity.

Eud. Here comes the major, dear father, say nothing till we are certain of success.

Brock. Oh! mum!⁹ leave me alone!

(*They arrange the table and chairs.*)

1) daß Vorzeigen derselben zur Bedingung gemacht. 2) er soll nur. 3) nach. 4) einem Verfehmten. 5) um jeden Verdacht desto besser zu vereiteln. 6) als. 7) ohne Mitgift. 8) jedoch. 9) stille!

Enter *Major Vanberg*.

Van. I thought, I heard Ulrica's voice.

Brock. She's not arrived yet; but come, sit down — here's the wine, and it is very good, I can promise you. *(Sits, and uncorks the bottle.)*

Eud. *(Looking through the window.)* Here comes Ulrica now.

Enter *Ulrica*, hastily.

Brock. Come, come, ma'mzelle, we've been waiting for you.

Ulr. Your Pardon! *(Running to her father, and taking him aside.)* Father, our retreat is suspected! instant flight alone can save us.

Van. Hah!

Ulr. A reward is offered for your apprehension. Dear father, let us flee.

Van. *(Bitterly.)* Flee! whither, my child? whither can we flee? The island swarms¹ with soldiers, and all passage to Stralsund is strictly forbidden, without an express order from the king.

Brock. *(Rising and advancing to them.)* Hollo! what's the matter? You seem alarmed.

Van. My friend, we are betrayed; and we are lost.

Brock. Betrayed! *(Aside.)* That d . . .² colonel! *(Aloud.)* No, no, don't be frightened,³ there's some mistake.

Ulr. No, 'tis known we are in Rugen and — — *(Knocking at the door.)*

Van. They come!

Brock. No, no, I tell you — it can't be — it shan't be! Here, in here — you, Eudy — all of you.

(Exeunt⁴ Vanberg and Ulrica.)

Eud. *(To Brock.)* Dear Sir, is anything serious —?

Brock. Serious! Oh, Eudy, Eudy! I'm afraid you've played us a bad game.⁵ But in with you,⁶ and keep close;⁷ I must do the best I can, now. *(Pushes her out after them.)* Where's my pipe? *(Taking it out of his pocket, and throwing himself in a chair.)* So, now I'm ready for them. *(Sings.)*

1) wimmelt. 2) verdammt. 3) erschrecken Sie nicht. 4) gehen ab. 5) du hast uns böses Spiel gemacht. 6) hinein mit dir! 7) halte dich still!

Merry, merry, merry!

Ever merry be!

(A knock at the door.)

Come in — come in — don't stand outside the door there; come in, friend, whoever you are — no ceremony here.

(Singing.)

Never was there merry man,

But honest, too, was he.

Enter *Charles XII.*

Charles. I would¹ speak with Adam Brock.

Brock. Well, you do speak with him, then — I'm Adam Brock, at your service. Who may you be?

Charles. An officer of the king's household.

Brock. Well, and your business with me? Sit down, sit down, man — no ceremony, I say. There's a chair close beside you. *(Takes out his tobacco-box, and fills his pipe.)* You don't mind smoke, do you?²

Charles. *(Sits down near the table.)* No, nor fire either; I am tolerably used to (an) both.

Brock. Ha, ha! I've no doubt, as you're one of the king's officers. You must be all Salamanders,³ to keep close to him. Well your business with me?

Charles. Do you remember the letter you wrote to the Council of Regency, after the battle of Pultawa?

Brock. Perhaps, I do. But what do you know about it?

Charles. You shall hear: I was with the king at Bender, when a copy of it was forwarded to him with the news of the victory of Helsinberg. It ran thus: "My lords! Charles the Twelfth hates unnecessary words — so do I — Sweden wants money and soldiers — I send you herewith my only son, and the savings⁴ of thirty years. — My boy I give to his country; but, for the sake of a little girl I have still at home, I shall expect the king to repay me the money on his return to Sweden."

Brock. *(Laughing.)* Well! I believe that's nearly word for word. I'm a queer⁵ hand at letter-writing.⁵ But I say, my fine fellow, you've a much better memory than your master; for he's been twelve months now at

1) Ich möchte. 2) Sie haben doch nichts gegen den Rauch? — 3) Salamander oder Feuergeister. 4) die Ersparnisse. 5) Ich bin ein wunderlicher Briefschreiber.

Stralsund — ay, and backwards and forwards into the island here — and not once sent to say as much as: “Brock, I can’t pay you.”

Charles. He was to blame.

Brock. To blame — I believe you! I wish I could see him, I’d tell him what I thought of him. How did he know but¹ I might be in want of the money by² this time? I told him I had a daughter. Suppose, now, my brave boy, Fred, had been shot by some of those rascally Danes, and I had gone the way of all flesh, what was³ to have become of poor Eudy, I should like to know? But no matter now.⁴ Only, I say, catch me lending him money again — that’s all!

Charles. (*Smiling.*) Come, come — you must make some allowances⁵ for this poor king: he has had enough upon his mind to make him forget more important matters. It is now nearly sixteen years ago since Charles the Twelfth leaped, sword in hand, into the sea at Humblebeck; and, since that hour, that sword has not rested many days in its scabbard. But he has not forgotten his debt to Adam Brock, and I am sent to pay it.

Brock. Are you really? Come that’s capital!

Charles. See (*Producing a paper*), here is an order for the money, with the regular interest from the time it has been used.

Brock. (*Laughing.*) Ha, ha, ha! Well, now, that is honest. Now he and I are friends again. Indeed I’m as glad —

Charles. (*Holding the paper to him.*) Take it, my friend.

Brock. Not I — certainly! Don’t suppose I’m glad about that — no, no. My delight is that Charles the Twelfth, the king who never broke his word, has not forfeited⁶ that honourable distinction.

Charles. But you will take your own,⁷ surely?

Brock. Not a shilling of it! (*Laughing.*) Ha, ha, ha! how the man stares! Lord bless you, my good friend, I don’t want it, thank Heaven! Things have prospered since I sent that to Stockholm: I’ve had⁸ a legacy left me, of double the sum; my farm thrives; my boy Fred is made a sergeant, and likely to win his own way to

1) daß ich . . . nicht brauche. 2) um. 3) was hätte aus der armen E. werden sollen? 4) daß thut jetzt nichts. 5) Nachsicht haben mit. 6) ver-
schert. 7) Eigentum. 8) Man hat mir ein Vermächtnis hinterlassen.

honour and glory! I've enough to live on as well as I wish, and, should I die to-morrow, to leave my pretty Eudiga something handsome, by way¹ of a wedding-portion. No, no; take that paper back to the king, with my compliments; tell him he has still more need of it than I [have], and I give it him, altogether.

Charles. (*Aside.*) Singular man! (*Aloud.*) But the king cannot suffer — —

Brock. Pooh! don't tell me — he must suffer! I've said the word, my friend (*Slapping Charles on the shoulder*), and I stick to it as firm as he does.

Charles. But the king is notoriously obstinate; and —

Brock. Oh! yes, I know; the Turks call him "Iron Head." When I was at school, they called me "Wooden Head." (*Laughing.*) Ha, ha, ha! I'm as obstinate as he is, I'll lay² you a wager.

Charles. But, at any rate, he is the strongest; and he will, therefore, compel you to accept.

Brock. Will he? — Ha, ha, ha! that remains to be seen. I know he wants it, and he must keep it.

Charles. But, my good friend Brock, there's another reason which may have some weight with you: his Majesty has expressly forbidden me to reappear before him till this paper is delivered into your hands; you know the implicit obedience he expects from his servants. Would you be the cause of my disgrace?

Brock. Why, no, to be sure; but, if that's all. I'll manage it for you. Give me the paper. (*Taking it.*) There — now you *have* delivered it into my hands, you know.

Charles. True; and now — —

Brock. And now you'll see what I'll do with it.

(*Folds up the order, and, putting one end in the candle, sets it on fire.*)

Charles. (*Hastily.*) What are you doing?

Brock. (*Holding up the burning paper.*) Cancelling³ a debt of the state — ha, ha, ha! (*Laughing and lighting his pipe with the order.*) There's a lesson for your chancellor of the exchequer!⁴

Charles. (*Rising.*) Well, well — I give you warning; Charles the Twelfth is not the man to be outdone⁵

1) als Aussteuer. 2) Ich will eine Wette mit Ihnen eingehen. — 3) Ich vernichte eine Staatsschuld. 4) Finanzminister. 5) sich an Großmuth übertreffen zu lassen.

in generosity; he will pay his debt in some way or other.

Brock. Let him stay till I ask him, then. One of these days, perhaps, I may want his good¹ word for a friend, and then let him give me his hand like a man, and say, "Adam Brock, you shall have it."

Charles. Agreed! In his name, I promise you. (*Holding out his hand to Brock.*) "Adam Brock, you shall have it!"

Brock. (*Rising.*) That's hearty. (*A knocking heard.*) Come in.

Enter *Gustavus de Mervelt.*

Brock. Another officer! (*Aside.*) We mayn't be all safe yet!

Charles. (*Signing Gustavus to be silent.*) Oh! a young friend of mine, who is tired of waiting for me. (*Aside.*) Now, Sir, what news? You have ridden hard.

Gust. (*Aside.*) The Danish fleet is off Stresow, Sire.

Charles. (*Aside.*) Good! (*Aloud.*) Farewell, friend; I shall report your answer to the king.

Brock. Well; but stay — you'll take a glass of wine before you go?

Charles. I never drink wine.

Brock. You don't! how I pity you! But I forgot. Ha, ha, ha! Ugh, you sly rogue. (*Winking, and nudging² him.*) What, because the king never drinks wine, you won't, eh? ha, ha! And I suppose you will make believe not to love the girls, either, as he don't? Ho, ho, ho! that's a capital joke. I should certainly never do³ for a courtier. I love 'em dearly, bless their sweet hearts! And I love a good glass of wine, too, my boy. So, here's the king's health in a bumper! (*To Gustavus.*) I say, young one, you'll pledge⁵ me at any rate?

Gust. With all my soul!

Brock. Ah! you're one of the right sort, I see⁶ with half an eye⁶. There's for you. (*Pouring out bumpers.*) Here's⁷ Charles the Twelfth, and success to him.

Gust. Charles the Twelfth, and success to him!

1) seine Fürsprache. 2) mit dem Ellenbogen stoßend. 3) zu einem Hofmann passen. 4) in einem gefüllten Glas. 5) Sie werden mir Bescheid thun. 6) daß würde ein Blinder greifen or merken. 7) Auf das Wohl &c. des Zwölften.

Brock. Bless him! He's a good fellow at bottom, I believe, though he is a little too fond of fighting, eh? Mr. — — Mr. — — by the by, what's your name?

Charles. Name — oh, my name is — — (*Aside.*) What shall I say? (*Aloud.*) Reichel.

Brock. (*Starting.*) Reichel! What, Colonel Reichel?

Charles. Ay. (*Aside.*) He doesn't know him, surely?

Brock. How odd! (*Confidentially.*) Well, then, I say, havn't you and I something further¹ to talk about?

Charles. (*Embarrassed.*) Something further? No. (*Aside to Gustavus.*) To the inn for my horse! (*Exit Gustavus.*)

Brock. (*Aside.*) O, I see — he wants to get rid of the other, first. (*Aloud.*) Well, there, now he's gone, you can speak out!

Charles. Speak out!

Brock. Ay, to be sure. (*Taking him by the arm, and bringing him forward.*) Why, didn't you come here to speak to me about Eudy?

Charles. Eudy!

Brock. Yes, Eudy — my daughter! What the devil ails you? Have you changed your mind? Don't you mean to marry her?

Charles. I — marry your daughter?

Brock. Why, zounds! what do you mean by this? — You havn't been playing² the fool with her, I hope?

Charles. Certainly not. (*Aside.*) I have hit³ upon an unlucky name here! (*Aloud.*) My good friend, you are mistaken; I know nothing of your daughter. — The fact is — —

Brock. The fact is that you're a scoundrel! You don't know anything of my daughter, don't you? My word for it! but I'll make you know something of me, before I let you go! I see through it all: the king never wrote that paper — I wish I hadn't burned it. I know your object⁴ in coming here: you have betrayed my daughter, me, and my friends; but out of this house you don't⁵ budge till — —

1) über etwas Weiteres zu sprechen. 2) Sie haben sie doch nicht zum Besten gehabt? 3) ich habe einen . . gewählt! 4) Ihren Zweck. 5) kommen Sie nicht, bis . .

Enter *Triptolemus Muddlewerk*, with his clerk,
and four armed peasants.

Mud. Till I have examined you both, Mr. Brock.
Guard the door — search the house. — Clerk, sit there.

Vanberg, Ulrica, and Eudiga, are brought in.

Ah, Mr. Firmann and his daughter! I shall want your evidence.

Brock. What's the meaning of all this?

Mud. Silence! — keep silence before the representative¹ of his Majesty! Yes, yes — this is my man, no doubt! (*Locking intently at Charles.*) My good friend, you will please² to give an account of yourself. Produce your papers — you have some papers, I suppose?

Charles. No.

Mud. No! — no papers! Put that down,³ clerk — he has no papers. You threatened to fling me out of the window, Mr. Brock: we shall see what the law will do with you for harbouring individuals without papers; and you, too, Mr. Firmann, I am sorry to say, you stand in the same predicament.⁴ Do either of you know the person you have received under your roofs?

Brock. (*Sitting.*) I know him for⁵ a base traitor.

Mud. Put down that he knows him for a base traitor! I thought as much.

Brock. Who has trifled⁶ with the feelings of an innocent girl that loved and trusted him. Eudy, my child, what say you now to your noble colonel? He disowns⁷ all knowledge of you.

Eud. My noble colonel, Sir? — Who? — That gentleman?

Brock. Ay, Colonel Reichel.

Eud. That is not my Colonel Reichel, Sir!

Brock. No! — Well, I must say, I did think my Eudy had an uncommonly queer taste. But he called himself Colonel Reichel, at any rate.

Mud. Oh! indeed! Take notice of that, clerk — travelling under an assumed name! You have a military air,⁸ friend! May I ask if you are in his Majesty's service?

Charles. I am not in his Majesty's service.

1) Vertreter. 2) es wird Ihnen gefällig sein. 3) Schreiben Sie das nieder. 4) eigentümliche Lage, der Verdacht. 5) als einen gemeinen Verräther. 6) leichtfertiges Spiel . . . getrieben. 7) er leugnet. 8) Aussehen, n.

Mud. But you have been?

Charles. Formerly, till my father died.

Mud. (*Aside.*) As I suspected! — The very man! — I thought he could not escape my vigilance! (*Aloud.*) Know, all men, (*Pulling out papers*) that I, Triptolemus Muddlewerk, burgomaster of Circow, am instructed¹ by these papers to seize the person of a notorious traitor, who is lurking disguised amongst the loyal inhabitants of Rugen. I think I need not go far to put my finger upon the culprit. Let me see. (*Looking alternately at his papers and Charles.*) The said Charles Vanberg is about five feet, ten inches in height — forehead high — very little hair. — Take off your hat, friend. (*Charles takes off his hat.*) There's very little there. — Aged forty-five. (*Aside.*) He doesn't look quite forty-five. (*Aloud.*) What is your age, friend?

Charles. Thirty-three.

Mud. (*Aside.*) He looks older than thirty-three. — (*Aloud.*) If you are not the man I think² you, pray, what is your name?

Charles. Charles.

Mud. As I anticipated. — But Charles what, friend? Charles is only your Christian name, I presume.

Charles. I was never called by any other.

Mud. Put down that, clerk — that's very remarkable. Have you any settled habitation?³

Charles. I have not had one for nearly sixteen years.

Mud. Put down, no settled habitation. — The fellow is a perfect vagabond, be he who he may!⁴ — But, hark ye, friend, I have a luminous idea: you said, I remember, just now, that you had a father. — Now, Sir, upon your allegiance, if you ever had a father, what was that father's name?

Charles. Charles.

Mud. What, Charles, and only Charles? Sirrah! sirrah! this is contempt of court!⁴ — You don't pretend to tell⁵ me that both of you were always called plain⁶ Charles?

Charles. Not exactly: he was sometimes, for distinction's⁷ sake, called Charles XI. of Sweden.

1) angewiesen. 2) für den ich Sie halte. 3) festen Wohnsitz. — 4) Übrigkeit. 5) Sie werden mir doch nicht sagen wollen. 6) einfach. 7) zur Unterscheidung. 8) wer er auch sein mag.

Mud. (*Starting.*) Eh! — how?

Charles. Consequently, I am Charles XII.

All. The king.

(*All kneel but Muddlewerk, who makes only one step to the door, and rushes out, the clerk sneaks after.*)

Charles. (*Laughing.*) Hey-day!¹ what's become of my learned representative? — Rise, my good friends, your king has more occasion for you to stand by him than to kneel before him. — Well, my obstinate creditor!

Brock. (*Kneeling, and trying to smother² a laugh.*) I beg Your Majesty's pardon, but I must laugh, if I'm to be hanged for it.

Charles. Laugh — laugh, my honest friend; you have our free consent. (*Cannon heard without.*) But, hark! — these cannon announce the landing of the enemy.

Enter *Gustavus de Mervelt*, and *First and Second Officer*, hastily.

Now, Sir, the Danes?

Gust. Prince Anhalt is in Stresow, Sir.

Charles. 'Tis well — we will attack him to-night. To horse³ and away!

All. Long live the king!

(*Exeunt Charles, Gustavus, and First and Second Officer.*)

Ulr. (*Embracing her father.*) Father, you are yet safe — let us fly!

Van. (*Snatching a sword from above⁴ the chimney-piece.*) Yes, I will hence, but it shall be to the battle! — I will seek an honourable death in the ranks of my country, and wipe out the foul stain of treason in the blood of her enemies!

Brock. (*Doing the same.*) Bravo! — And Adam Brock will fight by your side! — Don't hold me, Eudy. — In such a cause as this, I've a great mind to put⁵ you into a pair of breeches, and make you fight, too. — I go with you, my friend! — Charles XII. for ever! — Down⁶ with the Danes! — Hurrah!

(*Exeunt.*)

End of Act I.

1) He da! 2) erschießen, unterdrücken. 3) zu Pferd. 4) vom Kamin herunter. 5) zu stecken. 6) Nieder!



Vocabulary.*) Wörterbuch.

1.

Severe schwer.
defeat Niederlage f.
review Heerchau f.
jokingly scherzhaft.
cut Schnitt m., Hieb m.
cheek Wange f.
alehouse Wirtshaus n.
scratch Schramme f.
reckoning Reche f.

2.

Candid aufrichtig.
confession Bekenntnis n.
fray Streit m.
surgeon Wundarzt m.
brains Gehirn, sing. n.

3.

To describe beschreiben irr. v.
to content sich begnügen reg. v.
edifice Gebäude n.
bard Sänger m.
cheap billig, wohlfeil.
to reply erwidern, reg. v.

4.

Curiosity Neugierde f.
ashamed beschämt.
march Marsch m.
expedition Feldzug m.
to entreat bitten irr. v.
design Absicht f.
to keep bewahren r. v.
a secret ein Geheimniß n.

5.

To offer an'bieten irr. v.
talent Talent n.
to divide teilen r. v.
equally gleichmäßig.
to bear tragen irr. v.

nor noch.

the offer das Anerbieten.

to accept an'nehmen sep. irr. v.

6.

Boatman Schiffer m.
fort Furt f.
to hire mieten r. v.
rather ein wenig.
agited bewegt, unruhig.
passage Überfahrt f.

7.

Simplicity Einfalt f.
the rabbit das Kaninchen.
lock das Schloß.

8.

Pope der Papst.
alchymist Goldmacher m.
to dedicate widmen reg. v.
to pretend behaupten reg. v.
method Methode f.
magnificent prächtig.
present Geschenk n.
empty leer.
purse der Beutel.

9.

Excessive übertrieben.
politeness die Höflichkeit.
a journey eine Reise.
to approach sich nähern reg. refl.
mayor Bürgermeister. [v.
numerous zahlreich.
cavalcade Reiterchar f.
return Rückkehr f.
to pass gehen irr. v., passieren
brook Bach m. [r. v.
to attempt versuchen reg. v.
to prevent hindern reg. v.
to bow sich verbeugen reg. refl.
humbly demütig. [v.

*) When there is an apostrophe behind the prefix of verbs, it means that the prefix is separable.

presumption Anmaßung f.
to unworthy unwürdig.
steed Hengst m.
to satisfy stillen r. v.

10.

Troy Troja.
famous berühmt.
Priam Priamus.
to besiege belagern reg. v.
success Erfolg m.
wall Mauer f.
stratagem Kriegslist f.
armed bewaffnet.
to admit einlassen sep. irr. v.
gift Geschenk n.
the middle die Mitte.
belly Bauch m.
to burn verbrennen r. v.

11.

Watchman Nachtwächter m.
robbed beraubt.
to fall upon überfallen insep. v.
irr. (acc.).
lonely einsam.
immediately sogleich.
to complain of sich beklagen
über (acc.) reg. refl. v.
whether ob.
to have on anhaben sep. v.
the waistcoat die Weste f.
to wear tragen irr. v.
to rejoin erwidern reg. v.
to assure versichern reg. v.
to belong to gehören zu r. v.
company Kompanie f.
shirt Hemd n.

12.

Rome Rom.
inhabitant Einwohner m.
brave tapfer.
to fight kämpfen r. v.
to carry on führen r. v.
the Carthaginians die Karthager.
various verschieden, wechselnd.

success Erfolg m.
to conquer besiegen reg. v.
to destroy zerstören reg. v.

13.

The ass der Esel.
the misfortune das Unglück.
to have mercy Erbarmen haben
mit.
trembling zitternd.
sick krank.
beast Tier n.
thorn Dorn m.
really wirklich.
conscientiously gewissenhaft.
compelled bewogen.
misery Elend n.
supplicating bittend.
donkey Esel m.

14.

Grecian griechisch.
usual gebräuchlich.
battalion Bataillon' n.
to communicate mittheilen sep.
command Befehl m. [r. v.
standard Fahne f.
trumpet Tromp'ete f.
confusion Verwirrung f.
din Lärm m., Getümmel n.
signal Signal n. or Zeichen n.
purpose Zweck m.
to relate erzählen insep. r. v.
to shout rufen irr. v.
hence daher.
powerful gewaltig.
voice Stimme f.
to possess besitzen irr. v.

15.

Bible association Bibel=Gesell=
schaft f.
severely hart, streng.
to reprove tadeln reg. v.
drawer Schublade f.
properly covered sorgfältig mit
Papier überzogen.

to protect schützen r. v., schonen r.
binding Einband m. [v.
well Ei!
to exclaim aus'rufen irr. v.
glad froh.

16.

A printer ein Buchdrucker m.
occasion Veranlassung f.
to stop ein'fehren reg. v.
inn Wirtshaus n.
the landlord der Wirt.
inquisitive curiosity Neugierde f.
countrymen pl. Landsleute.
to torment quälen reg. v.
disposition Anlage f., Neigung f.
to pave pflastern r. v., bahnen
r. v.
to summon herbei'rufen irr. v.
solemnly feierlich.
account Bericht m.
further particulars weitere Ein-
zelheiten.

17.

Dean der Dean m.
late selig or verstorben.
tu put up ein'fehren reg. v.
uncleaned ungeputzt.
to mount auf'steigen irr. v.
to ride off fort'reiten irr. v.
to pull out heraus'ziehen irr. v.
to disturb stören reg. v.
master Herr.
blockhead Dummkopf m.
to fast fasten reg. v.
to pray beten reg. v.

18.

Columbus' egg das Ei des C.
to invite einladen irr. v.
a banquet ein Festmahl or Gast-
mahl n.
to assign an'weisen irr. v.
honorable ehrenvoll.
punctilious spitzfindig, kleinlich.
to observe beobachten reg. v.

repast die Mahlzeit.
to occur vor'kommen irr. v.
the anecdote die Anekdote (von).
shallow leicht.
present anwesend.
impatient of unwillig über
(Acc.).
jealous of eifersüchtig über
(Acc.).
abruptly plötzlich.
the Indies Indien.
capable fähig (gen.)
enterprise Unternehmung f.
immediate unmittelbar.
end Spitze f., Ende n.
whereupon worauf.
to rest ruhen r. v.
authority Autorität f.
historian Geschicht=Schreiber m.
to condemn verdammen reg. v.
trivial gemein, trivial.
to constitute aus'machen reg. v.
practical praktisch.
sagacity Scharfsinn m.
universal allgemein.
merit Wert m.

19.

Dervise Derwisch m.
to travel reisen reg. v.
Tartary die Tartarei.
palace Palaß m.
by mistake aus Irrtum m.
public öffentlich.
inn Wirtshaus n.
caravansery Karawanen=Her-
berge f. or Karawanjerei f.
gallery Galerie f.
down nieder.
wallet Reisefad m.
to spread aus'breiten reg. v.
carpet Teppich m.
in order in der Absicht.
to repose ruhen r. v., schlafen
manner Sitte f. [irr. v.
eastern östlich, orientalisches.
posture Stellung, Lage f.

guard Wache f.
 business Geschäft n.
 to intend beabsichtigen reg. v.
 to take up nehmen, aufschla-
 gen irr. v.
 lodging Wohnung f.
 angry böse, aufgebracht.
 to pass gehen irr. v.
 debate Wortwechsel m.
 Sire Majestät.
 possible möglicher Weise.
 dull dumm, einfältig.
 to distinguish unterscheiden insep.
 irr. v.
 leave Erlaubnis f.
 ancestors Vorfahren pl.
 at present gegenwärtig.
 to change wechseln reg. v.
 perpetual fortwährend or be-
 ständig.
 succession Aufeinanderfolge f.
 guest Gast m.

20.

Painter der Maler.
 to endeavour suchen r. v. or sich
 bemühen reg. refl. v.
 antiquity das Altertum.
 to resolve beschließen irr. v.
 to excel sich auszeichnen reg.
 art Kunst f. [refl. v.
 to surpass übertreffen irr. v.
 to form the project den Plan
 fassen reg. v.
 entirely ganz.
 defect Fehler m.
 to consider halten für irr. v.
 sufficient genügend.
 judge Richter m.
 to exhibit ausstellen sep. r. v.
 spectator Zuschauer.
 to mark bezeichnen reg. v.
 purpose Zweck m.
 faulty fehlerhaft.
 feature Zug m.
 fold Falte f. [wänder pl.
 drapery Mantel m. or die Ge-

to disapprove of mißbilligen r. v.
 trial Versuch m.
 lineament Zug m.
 folly Thorheit.
 author Verfasser, Verfertiger m.

21.

Reproof Zurechtweisung f.
 Norway Norwegen.
 powerful mächtig.
 sovereign Herrscher, König m.
 to fail verfehlen reg. v.
 flatterer Schmeichler m.
 grandeur Größe f.
 sea-shore Meeres-Ufer n.
 courtier Höfling m.
 tide Flut f.
 ocean das Weltmeer.
 to feign sich stellen refl. reg. v.
 submission Unterwerfung f.
 billows Wellen pl.
 creature Geschöpf n.
 universe das Weltall n.
 impotent unmächtig.
 the being das Wesen.
 to level eben machen r. v.
 nod Nink m.
 towering hoch.
 pile Haufen m.
 pride der Stolz.
 ambition der Ehrgeiz.

22.

Engaged verwickelt.
 to share teilen reg. v.
 danger Gefahr f. (pl. —en).
 inconvenience Unbequemlichkeit.
 common gemein.
 to halt Halt machen reg. v.
 to dismount absteigen.
 grenadier Grenadier 3d decl.
 to light anzündend reg. v.
 to wrap up einhüllen reg. v.
 to sit down sich setzen r. refl. v.
 bundle of wood Holzbündel m.
 extremely äußerst.

gently sanft.
 to slip off herab'gleiten (von)
 irr. neut. v.
 a faggot eine Welle.
 pillow Kopfkissen n.
 pipe Pfeife f.
 glad froh.
 carelessly unachtsamer Weise.
 to touch berühren ins. r. v.
 suddenly plötzlich.
 to wave winken mit der H. r. v.
 whisperingly leise.
 drowsy schläfrig.
 doze Schlummer m.
 some one present einer der An-
 wesenden.
 a motion eine Bewegung f.
 to rouse wecken r. v.
 to watch wachen r. v.
 to rest ruhen r. v.

23.

Scarce selten.
 article Artikel m.
 to stop an'halten irr. v.
 to ask for verlangen r. v.
 postilion Postillion m.
 to change horses die Pferde
 wechseln or umspannen sep. r. v.
 Majesty Majestät f.
 inn-keeper der Wirt.
 on which worauf (verb last).
 abundant überflüssig.
 excessively äußerst.
 rare selten.
*qu'il donnait ses œufs pour
 avoir des bœufs* = that he
 gave his eggs to buy oxen
 with them.

24.

Cross questions Querfragen.
 a regiment of guards ein Garde-
 regiment n., pl. =ter.
 personally persönlich.
 fresh frisch, neu.
 pay Sold m.

treatment Behandlung f.
 usual, adv. —ly gewöhnlich.
 to interrogate fragen r. v.
 order Ordnung f.
 unfortunately unglücklichweise.
 to reply erwidern r. v.
 answer Antwort f.
 mad verrückt.
 astonished erstaunt.
 a mad-man ein Narr.
 enraged zornig.
 in French auf Französisch.

25.

Female heroism Weiblicher Hel-
 denmut m.
 gamekeeper Waldbüter, För-
 ster m.
 solitary einsam.
 to appear erscheinen irr. v.
 apparently scheinbar.
 situation Lage f.
 to prepare bereiten r. v.
 to communicate in Verbindung
 stehen irr. v.
 to drop fallen lassen irr. v.
 beard Bart m.
 to wear tragen irr. v.
 robust stark.
 poniard Dolch m.
 mode of escape Mittel zu ent-
 kommen.
 to arm bewaffnen r. v.
 chopper Hackmesser.
 boiling kochend.
 to enter eintreten irr. v.
 face Gesicht n.
 blow Schlag, Streich m.
 neck Hals m.
 insensible besinnungslos.
 ground der Boden.
 a knock ein Klopfen n.
 to occasion veranlassen ins. r. v.
 to look out hinaus'schauen r. v.
 upper obere.
 admittance Einlaß m.
 refusal Weigerung f.

to threaten drohen r. v.
 to proceed sich anschicken r. refl. v.
 threat Drohung.
 execution Ausführung.
 to shoot schießen irr. v.
 shoulder Schulter f.
 useless vergeblich.
 on the spot auf der Stelle.
 incitement Antrieb m.
 spirits Feuer n. sing.
 to fire schießen irr. v.
 to scream schreien irr. v.
 to attract anziehen irr. v.
 to induce bewegen irr. v.

26.

Persian persisch.

to deposit niederlegen r. v., in
 Verwahrung geben irr. v.
 a hundred-weight ein Zentner m.
 return Rückkehr f.
 to restore zurückgeben irr. v.
 no longer nicht mehr.
 to regret bedauern r. v.
 rat eine Ratte.
 to devour freissen irr. v.
 the whole das Ganze.
 liable ausgesetzt, unterworfen.
 accident Unfall m.
 prodigy Wunder n.
 perfidious treulos.
 to conceal verbergen irr. v.
 to burst ausbrechen irr. v.
 tears Thränen pl. f.
 to decline ablehnen sep. r. v.
 to love better mehr lieben.
 alas Leider!
 pity Mitleid (mit).
 a screech-owl eine Nacht'eule.
 to pounce upon herfallen über
 (acc.) irr. v.
 ruin Ruine f.
 to credit glauben r. v.
 booty Beute f.
 to catch fangen irr. v.
 excepting ausgenommen.
 to observe bemerken r. v.

right Recht n.
 to doubt bezweifeln r. v.
 remarkable merkwürdig.
 to weigh wiegen irr. v.
 to comprehend verstehen irr. v.
 to mean meinen r. v.
 hopeful hoffnungsvoll.
 similar ähnlich.
 discussion Gespräch n.
 gigantic riesengroß.
 a cabbage ein Krautkopf m.
 a sancepan eine Pfanne f.,
 Kessel m.
 softly sachte.
 to boil kochen r. v.

27.

Hermit Einsiedler m.
 zeal Eifer m.
 courage Mut m.
 piety Frömmigkeit f.
 a pilgrimage eine Wallfahrt f.
 the holy sepulchre das heilige
 Grab.
 to behold sehen irr. v.
 indignation Unwissen.
 manner die Art.
 to treat behandeln ins. r. v.
 the Infidels die Ungläubigen.
 in possession im Besiz.
 unable unfähig.
 to repress zu unterdrücken ins.
 r. v.
 resentment Rachegefühl n.
 bold Kühn.
 design Plan m.
 yoke Joch n.
 to propagate verbreiten r. v.
 views Absichten.
 at that time damals adj.
 pope Papst.
 enthusiast Schwärmer m.
 to assist unterstützen ins. r. v.
 bounds Grenzen.
 to preach predigen r. v.
 crusade Kreuzzug.
 Christendom die Christenheit.

bare-headed barhäuptig.
 to inflame entflammen ins. r. v.
 rank Stand m., Klasse f.
 fame Ruf m.
 diffused verbreitet.
 prelates Prälaten.
 to concur wettheuern r. v. insep.
 nobles Adlige.
 council Kirchen=Versammlung f.
 to exhort ermahnen ins. r. v.
 assembly Versammlung.
 inspiration göttliche Eingebung f.
 the will der Willen.
 universal allgemein.
 migration Wanderung f.
 western westlich.
 east Osten m.
 flew to arms eilten zu den Waffen.
 utmost äußerst.
 alacrity Fröhlichkeit f.
 sign Zeichen n.
 cross Kreuz n.
 shoulder Schulter f.
 mark Beweis m.
 devotion die Hingebung.
 cause Sache f.

28.

Filial affection kindliche Liebe.
 a page ein Page (2nd decl.) or
 Junker m.
 imprudence Unklugheit f.
 conspiracy Verschwörung.
 proscribed verbannt.
 property Vermögen n.
 confiscated konfisziert.
 consequently folglich.
 salary Gehalt m.
 tender zärtlich.
 deeply afflicted at tief betrübt
 über (acc.).
 situation Lage f.
 poverty Armut f.
 reduced to gestürzt in.
 unable unfähig.
 to support ertragen ins. irr. v.
 idea Gedanken m.

sufferings Leiden pl.
 the parent der Vater.
 to miss vermiffen r. v.
 to refuse sich weigern refl. v.
 obstinately hartnäckig.
 circumstance Umstand m.
 to burst ausbrechen irr. v.
 to confess bekennen ins. irr. v.
 duty Pflicht f.

29.

Delicacy Zartgefühl n.
 Aragon Aragonien.
 jeweller Juwelier' m.
 to purchase kaufen r. v.
 to accompany begleiten r. v.
 courtiers pl. Hofleute.
 to spread ausbreiten r. v.
 precious stone Edelstein m.
 hesitation Zögern n.
 to request bitten irr. v.
 something important etw. Wich-
 tiges.
 to re-enter wieder ein'treten irr. v.
 value Wert m.
 attendant Begleiter m.
 to look at an'sehen irr. v.
 sternly finster or streng.
 to deserve verdienen r. v.
 publication Veröffentlichung f.
 to tarnish beslecken r. v.
 the reputation der gute Namen.
 honorable ehrbar.
 disgrace Schande f.
 to plunge tauchen r. v.
 closed geschlossen. [irr. v.
 to draw out herausziehen sep.
 to suspect in Verdacht nehmen.
 the culpable person der Schuld-
 ige.
 torment Qual f., pl. —en.
 conscience Gewissen n.

30.

Author Schriftsteller m.
 laborious arbeitsam, fleißig.
 intellect Verstand m.
 brilliant glänzend.

success Erfolg m.
 indefatigable unermüdlich.
 perseverance Beharrlichkeit f.
 to publish heraus'geben irr. v.
 effort Anstrengung f.
 particular besondere.
 to fumble at befühlen (acc.), spie-
 lower untere. [len mit r. v.
 waistcoat Weste f.
 to remove entfernen ins. r. v.
 slily schlag.
 surprise Ueberraschung f.
 to derange stören r. v.
 idea Gedanken m.
 a chance eine Gelegenheit f.
 anxiety Angst f.
 measure Maßregel f.
 to succeed gelingen irr. v.
 interrogation Prüfung f.
 disconcerted außer Faßung ge-
 bracht.

talisman das Zaubermittel.
 confused verwirrt.
 to recover wieder gewinnen irr. v.
 the author of the trick der Ur-
 heber des Streiches.
 to reproach Vorwürfe machen.
 to present itself sich darbieten
 ardour Eifer m. [sep. irr. v.

31.

Affection Liebe f.
 to conceive fassen r. v.
 the Protector der Protektor.
 to discourage entmutigen r. v.
 to propose vor'schlagen sep. irr.
 secret geheim.
 marriage Heirat f.
 consent Einwilligung f.
 to discover entdecken r. v.
 to watch wachen r. v., Acht geben
 in a fury wütend. [irr. v.
 to demand verlangen r. v.
 explanation Erklärung f.
 conduct das Betragen.
 presence of mind Geistes-Ge-
 genwart f.

highness Hoheit f.
 chamber-maid das Kammer-
 Mädchen.
 influence Einfluß m.
 to solicit bitten irr. v.
 to intercede Fürbitte einlegen r.
 to marry heiraten r. v. [v.
 the case der Fall.
 to blush erröten r. v.
 coquetry Koketterie f.
 chaplain Kaplan m. [irr. v.
 to submit sich unterwerfen insep.
 to expose aussetzen sep. r. v.
 vengeance Rache f.
 bride Braut f.
 attractive anziehend.
 a portion eine Mitgift.

32.

Humanity Menschlichkeit f.
 reign Regierung f.
 chemist Chemiker m.
 to prepare bereiten r. v.
 audience Audienz f.
 composition Zusammenfetzung f.
 destructive zerstörend.
 gunpowder das Pulver.
 chemistry Chemie f.
 experiment Versuch m.
 presence Gegenwart f.
 superiority Überlegenheit f.
 invention Erfindung.
 ingenious finureich.
 to destroy zerstören r. v.
 handsomely reichlich.
 ingenuity Erfindungsgeist m.
 to divulge aus'breiten r. v.

33.

Cunning schlau.
 cutler Messerschmied m.
 statue Standbild.
 on horseback zu Pferde.
 revolution die Revolution.
 decapitation Enthauptung, Hin-
 richtung f.

the monarch der Monarch 2nd
 decl. [irr. v.
 to take down herab'nehmen sep.
 to demolish vernichten r. v.
 to manufacture verfertigen r. v.
 number die Zahl or Anzahl.
 handle Stiel m.
 shop der Laden.
 to expose aus'stellen r. v.
 to retire sich zurück'ziehen (Imp.
 zog 3.).
 to melt schmelzen irr. v.
 restoration Wiederherstellung or
 Restauration.
 to erect errichten r. v.
 to spare ersparen r. v.
 to cast gießen irr. v.
 possession Besitz m.
 moderate mäßig.
 bargain Handel m.
 secretly heimlich.
 preserved aufbewahrt.
 re-elevated wieder aufgestellt.
 pedestal Fußgestell n.

34.

Curious merkwürdig.
 laughable lächerlich.
 study das Studium.
 problem Problem' n.
 housekeeper Haushälterin.
 fasting das Fasten.
 saucepan Pfanne f.
 to stay bleiben irr. v., warten
 alone allein. [r. v.
 to place legen r. v.
 by the side of neben (acc.)
 fire-side der Ofen, der Kamin'.
 mistake der Irrtum.
 to commit begehen irr. v.

35.

Value Wert m.
 to ascend bestiegen irr. v., acc.
 magnanimity Großmut f.
 government Regierung f.
 economizer of time Zeitsparer m.

a moment ein Augenblick.
 to divide teilen r. v.
 portion Teil m.
 to appropriate widmen r. v.
 accomplishment Ausführung f.
 objects Dinge pl.
 flight Flucht f.
 to mark bezeichnen r. v.
 reflection Nachdenken n.
 experiment der Versuch.
 wax Wachs n.
 length Länge f.
 experience Erfahrung f.
 division Abteilung f.
 inch Zoll m.
 expiration Ablauf m.
 about ungefähr.
 to denote an'zeigen r. v.
 the lapse der Verfluß.
 to obtain erlangen ins. r. v.
 exact genau.
 improvements Verbesserungen.
 to appreciate würdigen or
 schätzen r. v.

36.

The bagpiper revived der wie-
 der belebte Sackpfeifer.
 event Ereigniß n.
 plague Pest f.
 to carry off weg'raffen r. v.
 used pflegte.
 a step Stufe f.
 to escape entrinnen irr. v.
 contagion Seuche f.
 gin Branntwein m.
 drunk betrunken.
 fast fest.
 custom Gewohnheit f.
 prevalence Dauer f.
 cart Karren m.; pl. Karren.
 to collect sammeln r. v.
 the dead die Toten pl.
 grave Grab n.
 pit Grube f.
 environs die Umgebung f. sing.
 extended ausgedehnt.

to toss werfen irr. v.
 to observe bemerken r. v.
 to pay attention Acht geben irr.
 to bark bellen r. v. [v.
 to howl heulen r. v.
 most piteously ganz erbärmlich.
 the rumbling das Rumpeln.
 the cries das Geschrei sing.
 drunken lethargy totenähnlicher
 Zustand der Betrunktheit m.
 air Lied n.

terror Schrecken m.

carters Fuhrleute.

erect aufrecht.

amid mitten unter (dat.).

to release befreien r. v.

to restore zurück'geben irr. v.

sculptor Bildhauer m.

epoch Zeit f.

statue Bildsäule f. (von).

37.

Mercury Merkur'.

woodman Holzhauer.

to fell fällen r. v.

bank Ufer n.

by chance zufällig.

hatchet Axt f.

to drop fallen irr. v.

distress Not f.

loss Verlust m.

tool Werkzeug n.

to bemoan sich beklagen r. refl. v.

to appear erscheinen irr. v.

complaint Klage f.

to dive un'tertauchen r. v.

silver (adj.) silbern. [sen r. v.

to allege anführen sep. r. v., bemerk-

to fetch up herauf'holen sep. r.

everjoyed übergelüchlich. [v.

humility Demut f.

pleased with erfreut über (acc.).

honesty Ehrlichkeit.

just gerecht.

dealing Benehmen n.

account of Bericht von . . ., m.

designedly absichtlich.

to sit down sich niederlegen sep.

to weep weinen r. v. [r. v.

sorely afflicted tief betrübt.

precious köstlich.

to snatch weg'nehmen sep. irr.

greedily begierig. [v.

the god der Gott.

to detest verabscheuen r. v.

abominable abscheulich.

impudence Frechheit f.

own eigen.

38.

Eel Aal m., pl. Aale.

a poodle dog ein Pudelhund m.

intelligent verständig.

basket Korb m.

mouth Maul n.

punctually pünktlich.

to execute besorgen r. v.

commission Auftrag m.

sport Spaß m.

order Bestellung f.

live leben'dig.

to trot off fort'traben r. v.

to slip schlüpfen r. v.

edge Rand m.

to tap einen leichten Schlag geben.

paw Pfote f.

load Ladung.

moment Augenblick m.

pavement Pflaster n.

to shake schütteln r. v.

incapable unfähig. [irr. v.

to crawl out heraus'friesen sep.

39.

Atheist Atheist' 2nd decl.

impious gottlos.

persons Leute pl.

contrary to im Widerspruch mit.

evidence Zeugniß n.

existence Dasein n.

omnipresent allgegenwärtig.

crime Verbrechen n.

the will der Willen.

element das Element.

injury Schaden m., Beleidigung f.
 reflection das Nachdenken.
 lump of earth der Klumpen
 Erde.
 blow Schlag m.
 doctrine Lehre f.
 harm Schaden m.
 confounded beschämt.
 the railleries pl., der Spott sing.
 hypocrisy Heuchelei f.
 infidels Ungläubige.
 a lesson eine Warnung, Lehre f.

40.

Manufactory Fabrikation f.
 famous berühmt.
 to present überreichen insep. r. v.
 citizen Bürger m.
 magistrates pl. die Behörden pl.
 express ausdrücken sep. r. v.
 joy die Freude f.
 reception Empfang m.
 sample Muster n.
 commodities pl. Waren.
 major-domo der Zeremonien-
 meister.
 graciously gnädig.
 to fling werfen irr. v.
 indignation Unwillen m.
 to reprimand tadeln r. v., ver-
 weisen irr. v.
 severely streng.
 deputation Deputation.
 indecency Unanständigkeit.
 unacquainted unbekannt.
 etiquette die Etikette f.
 customs Sitten.
 prejudice Vorurteil n.
 really wirklich.
 to burst ausbrechen irr. v.
 to endure ertragen ins. irr. v.
 operation die Operation.
 to appease besänftigen.
 heartily herzlich.
 recital Erzählung f.
 adventure die Geschichte, das
 Abenteuer.

41.

The lamb das Lamm n.
 sultry schwül.
 just gerade.
 clear klar.
 brook Bach m.
 thirst Durst m.
 to quench löschen r. v.
 distance Entfernung f.
 to pick a quarrel einen Streit
 anfangen irr. v.
 to trouble trüben r. v.
 muddy schmutzig.
 satisfaction Genugthuung f.
 charge Anklage f.
 tone Ton m.
 mild milde.
 to conceive begreifen irr. v.
 disturbed getrübt.
 up the stream strom=aufwärts.
 rascal Schurke m.
 to encourage heizen r. v., an-
 feuern r. v.
 to pursue verfolgen r. v.
 victim Opfer n.
 savage wild.
 innocent unschuldig.
 to vociferate brüllen r. v.
 to gnash fletschen r. v.
 frightened erschrocken.
 in rage vor Wut.
 to hate hassen r. v.
 determined entschlossen.
 revenge Rache f.
 defenceless schutzlos, verteidig-
 ungslös.
 to devour aufessen sep. irr. v.

42.

In favour in Gunst.
 royal königlich.
 to reckon rechnen.
 character Charakter m.
 opposite entgegengesetzt.
 vindictive rachsüchtig.
 rapacious raubgierig.

cowardly feig.
 reign Regierung f.
 perpetually beständig.
 subjects Unterthanen.
 welfare Wohlfahrt f.
 people das Volk sing.
 to acquire erwerben irr. v.
 surname Beinamen m.
 heroically heldenmütig.
 misfortune Unglück n.
 the treaty der Vertrag.
 to sign unterzeichnen ins. r. v.
 to agree einwilligen sep. r. v.
 crown Krone f.
 Gascony Gasconien.
 possession Besitz m.
 hostages Geiseln f. pl.
 execution die Ausführung f.
 on parole auf Ehrenwort.
 to deliver ausliefern sep. r. v.
 to explain erklären r. v.
 to terminate beendigen r. v.
 difference Streitigkeit f.
 to violate verletzen r. v. or
 brechen irr. v.
 want of faith Wortbruch m. or
 Wortbrüchigkeit f.
 sacred heilig.
 to assign anweisen irr. v.
 existence Dasein n. or Leben n.
 retinue Gefolge n.
 to bury begraben irr. v.
 the Abbey die Abtei.
 general gewöhnlich.
 burial-place Begräbnisplatz.
 sovereign König.

43.

Valuable wertvoll.
 to save retten r. v.
 to protect schützen r. v.
 consequently folglich.
 in memory of zum Andenken
 an (acc.).
 fidelity Treue f.
 church-yard Kirchhof m.
 epitaph Grabchrift f.

worthy würdig (gen.).
 consecrated ground geweihter
 Boden m.
 to inter begraben irr. v.
 busy geschäftig.
 the magistrate der Richter.
 to denounce anzeigen r. v.
 atheist Atheist m.
 to reproach vorwerfen irr. v.
 to threaten drohen r. v.
 to accuse anklagen r. v.
 ecclesiastical court der geistliche
 Gerichtshof.
 to be alarmed zu erschrecken.
 observations Bemerkungen pl.
 just richtig.
 intelligence Verstand m.
 astonishing erstaunlich.
 to merit verdienen r. v.
 tiresome langweilig.
 creature Geschöpf n.
 the act der Akt. [r. v.
 to convince überzeugen (von) ins.
 to pay honour ehren r. v.
 the remains die Überreste.
 inscription die Aufschrift.
 tomb Grabstein m.

44.

Ventriloquy die Bauchredner-
 kunst.
 art die Kunst.
 inwardly inwendig.
 apparent sichtbar.
 motion Bewegung f.
 organ das Organ', pl. Organe.
 speech Sprache f.
 to disguise verstellen r. v.
 eminent hoch.
 degree Grad m.
 to amuse belustigen.
 at the expense auf Kosten.
 to overtake einholen r. v.
 carter ein Fuhrmann m.
 a load of hay eine Ladung Heu.
 to imitate nachahmen sep. r. v.
 crying das Weinen or Schreien.

to repeat wiederholen r. insep.
 instant Augenblick m. [v.
 ventriloquist der Bauchredner.
 to insist behaupten r. v.
 to conceal verbergen irr. v.
 alarmed erschrocken.
 to unload abladen irr. v.
 to reload wieder aufladen sep.
 distinctly deutlich.
 villager Dorfbewohner.
 the devil der Teufel.
 clutch Klamme f.
 pitch-fork Mistgabel f.
 flail Dreschflegel m.
 in sight in Sicht.
 supposed vermeintlich.
 difficulty Schwierigkeit f.
 incredulous unglaublich.
 experiment Versuch m.
 to increase vermehren, vergrößern r. v.
 diabolic teuflisch.
 curate Pfarrer m.
 public house Wirtshaus n.
 to treat bewirten r. v.
 lunch Abendbrot n.
 to exhibit ausüben r. v.

45.

The page der Page (pronounce the g French), Junfer.
 tempted versucht.
 to resist widerstehen ins. irr. v.
 delicious köstlich.
 to devour verschlingen irr. v.
 to reflect nachdenken sep. irr. v.
 the consequence die Folge.
 lickerish naschhaft.
 rogue Schelm m.
 savoury schmackhaft.
 the note das Billet.
 the guard or guard-house die Hauptwache.
 the bearer der Überbringer.
 lash Streich m.
 guilty schuldig.
 conscience Gewissen n.

accuser Ankläger m.
 banker Banquier, Wechselr m.
 the guard die Wache.
 messenger Bote m.
 ceremonies die Ceremonien or Umstände.
 the back der Rücken.
 written schriftlich. [gung f.
 acknowledgement Bescheinigung f.
 to comply nachgeben sep. irr. v.
 account Rechnung f.
 to settle bezahlen r. v.
 to reach erreichen r. v.
 to confer erweisen irr. v.
 favours Gunstbezeugungen f. pl.
 in case of necessity im Nothfall.

46.

The lounge der Bummler or Müßiggänger.
 mode of treating die Art . . . zu behandeln.
 occasionally gelegentlich.
 age Zeitalter n.
 generation Generation' f.
 newspaper die Zeitung.
 store Buchladen m.
 finally endlich.
 shop-boy der Ladenjunge, Gehülfe.
 printing-office Druckerei f.
 counter Ladentisch m.
 dollar Thaler m.
 price Preis m.

47.

Cruelty die Grausamkeit.
 dispersion Zerstreuung f.
 Christian adj. christlich.
 to tax besteuern r. v.
 to conceal verhehlen r. v., ver-
 stecken r. v.
 to torture martern r. v.
 to acknowledge gestehen or an-
 erkennen insep. irr. v.
 in particular besonders.
 mark Mark f., Thaler m.
 disposed geneigt.

to reduce stürzen r. v.
to poverty in Armut.
the rest die übrigen pl.
barbarous barbarisch.

48.

Real wirklich.
intrinsic inner.
value Wert m.
jewels Juwelen pl.
finery Schmuck m., Puß m.
to astonish in Erstaunen setzen
a miller ein Müller. [r. v.
flour Mehl n.
to wear tragen irr. v.
to flatter schmeicheln r. v.
diamond necklace ein diamant-
tenes Halsband n.
bracelets Armbänder pl.
to suppose glauben r. v.
to guess erraten irr. v.
only to wear nur zum Tragen.
vulgarity Gemeinheit f.
idea der Gedanken.

49.

Singular selten.
excuse Ausrede f. or Entschul-
digung f.
day of trial Gerichtstag m.
defence Verteidigung f.
fellow-prisoner Mitgefangene m.
acquitted freigesprochen.
to bring up aufziehen irr. v.
to prove beweisen irr. v.
gosling Gänschen n.
witness Zeuge, pl. —en.
bar Schranke f.
to conduct führen r. v.
accusation Anklage f.
the Hibernian der Irländer.
a pistol eine Pistole.
the jury die Geschworenen pl.
credulous leichtgläubig.
sufficiently genug.
to transport transportieren r. v.

50.

Used pflegte.
crowded gedrängt.
infested unsicher gemacht.
continually beständig.
snuff-box Tabaksdose f.
ingenious sinnreich.
success Erfolg m.
fishhook Fischangel f.
to sew fast fest nähen r. v.
the point die Spitze.
clerk Gehilfe m.
to feel fühlen r. v.
slight leicht.
tug Zupfen n.
hurry Eile f.
to bite anbeißen sep. irr. v.
pike Hecht m.
shark Haiisch m.
firmly fest.
to hook einhaken sep. r. v.
surgeon Wundarzt m.
trick Streich m.
safely sicher.

51.

Singular selten.
precaution Vorsicht f.
spendthrift Verschwender m.
economical sparsam.
agreed ausgemacht.
mutual gegenseitig.
benefit Vorteil m.
to have charge of the purse
den Beutel tragen irr. v.
embarrassed in Verlegenheit.
curiosity Sehenswürdigkeit f.
prodigal verschwenderisch.
to borrow borgen r. v.
inexorable unerbittlich.
economy Sparsamkeit f.
expensive kostspielig, teuer.
to acknowledge anerkennen ins.
the trick der Streich. [irr. v.
in future künftig.
hiding-place Versteck n.

52.

Gratitude Dankbarkeit f.
 the lieutenant of the police der
 Polizei-Kommissär.
 the caliph der Kalife 2d decl.
 event Ereigniß n.
 to irritate erzürnen r. v.
 custody Haft f.
 to interrogate ausfragen, ver-
 hören r. v.
 interesting interessant.
 to pursue verfolgen r. v.
 refuge Zuflucht f.
 the pursuit die Verfolgung.
 to furnish versehen irr. v.
 to enable in Stand setzen r. v.
 opportunity Gelegenheit f.
 circumstance Umstand m.
 protector Beschützer.
 calamity Unglück n.
 displeasure Unwillen m.

53.

Generous edelmütig.
 to sacrifice opfern r. v.
 to preserve erhalten irr. v.
 to convince überzeugen ins. r. v.
 executioner Henker m.
 extraordinary außerordentlich.
 to expose aussetzen sep. r. v.
 improbable unwahrscheinlich.
 to impute zurechnen r. v. or zu-
 schreiben sep. irr. v.
 to express ausdrücken sep. r. v.
 inquiry Untersuchung f.
 to behead enthaupten r. v.
 to appoint anstellen r. v.

54.

A lesson eine gute Lehre.
 pride Stolz m.
 disposition Anlage f. or Ge-
 müthsart f.
 contrary entgegengesetzt.
 to despise verachten r. v.
 beneath him unter seinem Rang.
 superior höher.

unworthy unwürdig.
 notice Beachtung f.
 fit geeignet.
 the will der Willen.
 education Erziehung f.
 to confide anvertrauen r. v.
 impetuous heftig.
 haughty übermütig, stolz.
 subjects Unterthanen pl.
 manhood Mannbarkeit f.
 seat Sitz m.
 thorns Dornen pl.
 foreign ausländisch.
 nobility der Adel.
 birth die Geburt f.
 to distinguish unterscheiden ins.
 cradle Wiege f. [irr. v.
 swearing indem er schwor.
 to be discharged entlassen werden.

55.

To recognize erkennen r. v.
 superiority Überlegenheit f.
 precautions Vorsichtsmaßregeln.
 pure rein.
 to blush erröten r. v.
 to own gestehen irr. v. [v.
 to relapse zurückfallen sep. irr.
 to preserve aufbewahren r. v.
 bowl Schlüssel f.
 to point deuten auf (acc.) r. v.
 the vein die Ader.
 in proportion as in dem Maße
 als.
 to cultivate ausbilden sep. r. v.
 mankind die Menschlichkeit f.

56.

Mysterious geheimnißvoll.
 obscure wenig bekannt.
 preparations Anstalten pl.
 amusement Unterhaltung f.
 landlord Wirt m.
 stay Aufenthalt m.
 to gossip plaudern r. v.
 grocer Krämer m.
 spy Spion m.
 fool der Narr.

liberally freigebig.
to suit passen r. v.
smacking das Knallen.
whip Peitsche f.

57.

Proposal Vorschlag m.
advantageous vorteilhaft.
corner die Ecke.
method Mittel n.
preserve erhalten irr. v.
profitable einträglich.
possession Besitz m.
profit Gewinn m.
a shooting-excursion ein Jagd=
Ausflug m.
abundant reichlich.
ammunition Schießbedarf m.
shooting-bag Jagdtasche f.
return Rückkehr f.
uneasy unruhig.
suspicious argwöhnisch.
the note das Briefchen.

58.

To treat behandeln ins. r. v.
document Urkunde f.
to bury vergraben irr. v.
close to dicht an (dat.).
spot Platz m.
to indicate anzeigen sep. r. v.
to dig up aufgraben sep. irr. v.
chest Kiste f.
to shrug up zucken mit r. v.
motive Beweggrund m.

59.

The camel das Kamel.
to journey reisen r. v.
the desert die Wüste.
to rejoice versehen r. v., erwi=
dern r. v.
wheat Weizen m.
probability Wahrscheinlichkeit f.
cargo die Ladung.
search die Untersuchung.
to adduce beibringen ins. irr. v.
to convict überführen insep. v.

a sorcerer ein Zauberer.
calmness Ruhe f.
scope Spielraum m.
to cross überschreiten insep. irr. v.
the track die Spur.
to stray sich verirren i. v.
owner Eigentümer m.
to crop abweiden r. v., ab=
fressen sep. irr. v.
faint schwach.
to graze grasen r. v.
tuft Büschel m.
bite Biß m.
to inform belehren ins. r. v.
ant Ameise f.

60.

The whistle die Pfeife.
holiday Feiertag m.
shop Laden m.
toys Spielsachen.
sound Klang m.
to disturb stören r. v.
bargain Handel m.
folly Thorheit f.
to cry weinen r. v.
reflection Nachdenken n.
chagrin Verdruß m.
impression Eindruck m.
to continue fort dauern r. v.
constantly beständig.
bustles Handel pl. [reg. v.
to neglect vernachlässigen ins.
to ruin zu Grunde richten r. v.

61.

A miser ein Geizhals.
comfortable bequem.
benevolent wohlwollend.
laudable lobenswert.
improvement Ausbildung f.
corporeal körperlich.
sensations Genüsse pl.
furniture Möbel pl.
equipage Equipage f.
career Laufbahn f.
sweet-tempered freundlich, sanft.

estimate Schätzung f.
value Wert m.

62.

Benevolence Wohlwollen n.
melancholy schwermütig.
attitude Haltung f.
the bench die Bank.
determined entschlossen.
to make enquiries Nachfragen
anstellen r. v.
half-pay der halbe Sold.
transmit übersenden r. ins. v.
to solicit suchen r. v.
promotion Beförderung f.
residence Wohnung f.
surprise Überraschung f.

63.

Circumstances Verhältnisse pl.
to recover sich erholen r. refl. v.
to announce an'kündigen sep. v.
mutual gegenseitig. [v.
felicitations Glückwünsche.
worthy würdig.
amazed erstaunt.
delighted erfreut.
unexpectedly unerwartet.
embrace Umarmung f.
slow langsam.
possession Besitz m.
to acknowledge anerkennen r. v.
grounds Boden sing. m.
the heir der Erbe.

64.

Respect for Achtung vor (Dat.)
soap Seife f.
counter Ladentisch m.
vehemently heftig.
to wrap up ein'wickeln r. v.
to tear up zerreißen ins. irr. v.
emphasis Nachdruck m.
increasing steigend.
energy Thatkraft f.

65.

Sobbing seufzend.

concerned betrübt.
to dry up abtrocknen r. v.
weight Gewicht n.
to collect sammeln r. v.
bundle Bündel m.
scale Waagschale f.

66.

Empire das Reich.
contiguous benachbart.
barren unfruchtbar.
animosity Feindseligkeit f.
to subsist bestehen irr. v.
legislature Gesetzgebung f.
respect Hinsicht f.
prevailing herrschend.
church establishment die Kir-
chen=Einrichtung.

67.

The martyr der Märtyrer.
the century das Jahrhundert.
Cyril Cyrillus or Cyrill'.
fortitude Seelenstärke f.
threats Drohungen pl.
the blow der Schlag.
to restrain abhalten sep. irr. v.
with the applause unter dem
Beifall.
the zeal der Eifer.
to summon vor'laden sep. irr. v.
to address anreden sep. r. v.
to receive aufnehmen sep. irr. v.
to regard berücksichtigen ins. r. v.
to expel vertreiben irr. v.
the mansion die Wohnung.
to enable befähigen r. v.
the execution die Hinrichtung.
the sight der Anblick.
to overcome überwinden ins. irr.
inflexible unbeugsam. [v.
remonstrances Vorstellungen.
to continue fortsetzen sep. r. v.
the admiration die Bewunderung.

68.

A lesson eine gute Lehre.
a turbot eine Steinbutte.

the errand der Auftrag.
 generosity Freigebigkeit f.
 rudely unhöflich, grob.
 easy-chair Lehnstuhl m.
 the way die Art.
 manner Manieren pl., Anstand
 to change wechseln. [sing. m.
 the situations die Rollen.
 a low bow eine tiefe Verbeugung.
 to present sagen lassen irr. v.
 the act der Akt.
 wit der witzige Einfall.

60.

A traitor ein Verräter, Staatsver-
 to bear bestreiten irr. v. [brecher.
 ingenious witzig.
 brickdust Ziegelmehl n.
 the subject der Unterthan.
 the plot der Anschlag.
 the host der Wirt.
 knowledge Kenntniß f.
 the court der Gerichtshof.
 a droll ein Spaßvogel.

70.

In indea eingebildet.
 the rank der Rang, der Stand.
 undisturbed ungestört.
 purpose Zweck m.
 an estate ein Landgut n.
 sequestered abgelegen.
 alteration Veränderung f.
 the saw die Säge.
 the chisel der Meißel.
 discharged entlassen.
 to have recourse seine Zuflucht
 nehmen irr. v.

relief Erleichterung f.
 the bellows der Blasbalg, sing.
 to afford gewähren r. v.

71.

Eminent hervorragend.
 an idolater ein Götzendiener.
 a distemper eine Krankheit.
 to accost anreden sep. r. v.
 the term der Ausdruck.
 the conference die Unterredung.
 steadfastly fest.
 ta discern erkennen ins. irr. v.
 to inquire (into) fragen (nach).
 barbarity Grausamkeit f. [irr. v.
 to abhor verabscheuen ins. r. v.
 indignation der Unwillen.
 to predict vorherzusagen sep. r. v.

72.

Desperate verzweifelt.
 patriotism die Vaterlandsliebe.
 the prior der Prior.
 quarters Quartiere.
 the staff der Stab.
 to lull beschwichtigen r. v.
 wordly affairs weltliche Geschäfte.
 to settle erledigen r. v. [gift.
 antidotes das Gegenmittel, Gegen=

73.

Expedient Auskunftsmittel n.
 the bargain der Handel.
 to resume wieder annehmen.
 a handbill ein Anschlagzettel.
 to elude vermeiden ins. irr. v.
 care die Sorgfalt.
 caution die Vorsicht.

Letters.

1.
Amusement Unterhaltung f.
to interest interessieren r. v.
2.
Trifling klein, unbedeutend.
perseverance Ausdauer f.
the binding der Einband.
strongly sehr, bestens.
the precept die Vorschrift (pl. —en).
the pattern das Muster.
reliance Erwartung f.
to profit Nutzen ziehen (aus) irr. v.
3.
Valuable wertvoll, schätzbar.
to follow folgen (dat.) r. v.
to peruse durchlesen r. v.
to adhere to befolgen (acc.) r. v.
to bequeath hinterlassen ins. irr. v.
4.
To perfect vervollkommen, ausbilden r. v.
the circle der Kreis.
manners Manieren.
lucrative vorteilhaft, gewinnbringend.
respectable achtbar. [irr. v.
to rely sich verlassen (refl.) ins.
the production das Erzeugniß.
5.
Experienced erlitten, erfahren (part. p.)
to provide sorgen v. r.
the counting-house das Kontor.
the branch der Zweig, das Fach.
6.
On the subject of in Ansehung (with the Gen.).
to leave überlassen ins. irr. v.
- the direction die Leitung.
to prove (neuter verb) sich erweisen ins. irr. v.
the employer der Prinzipal'.
decision die Entscheidung.
7.
Lyons Lyon'. [sep. irr. v.
to present itself sich darbieten
to lodge logieren, wohnen.
8.
To apply sich wenden an refl. v.
by the steam-packet mit dem Dampfboot.
the custom-house officers die Zollbeamten.
scenery Landschaft f.
to procure sich verschaffen refl. v.
acceptable annehmbar.
lace Spitzen pl.
9.
To bring on herbeiführen sep. r. v.
the state der Zustand.
to dissappoint täuschen r. v.
intelligence Nachricht f.
10.
To set off abreisen sep. r. v.
the residence der Aufenthalt.
farewell Lebe wohl, or leben Sie wohl.
11.
Frigate die Fregatte.
brevity Kürze f.
a mosque eine Moschee.
12.
To present vorstellen sep. r. v.
to forward befördern ins. reg. v.
the enclosed die Inlage.

13.

Extravagance Verschwendung f.
 to stretch ausdehnen sep. r. v.
 the manager der Direktor.
 the art of an actor die Schau=
 spielfunst.
 on which worauf.
 the allowance der Gehalt.
 subsistence der Unterhalt.
 additional weiter.

to support one's self sich er=
 nähren insep. r. v., durch=
 bringen sep. irr. v.

14.

To rely sich verlassen (auf acc.)
 irr. refl. v.
 the hatred der Haß.
 to terrify schrecken ins. r. v.
 to establish aufrichten sep. r. v.

Method Gaspey-Otto-Sauer

for the Study of modern Languages.

For the use of Frenchmen.

Russian:

Fuchs, Prof. P., Grammaire russe. 2.éd. cloth.	6	—
— Corrigé des Thèmes de la Grammaire russe. 2.éd. boards.	2	—

Spanish:

Sauer, C. M., Grammaire espagnole. 2.éd. cloth.	6	—
— Corrigé des Thèmes de la Grammaire espagnole. boards.	2	—
Sauer-Roehrich, Lectures espagnoles. cloth.	5	—

For the use of Germans.

English:

Garrick, D., 'The Guardian'. Ein engl. Lustspiel. 2.Ed. sewed.	—	8
Gaspey, Dr. Th., Englische Konv.-Grammatik. 20.Ed. cloth.	5	6
— Englisches Konvers.-Lesebuch. 5.Ed. sewed.	3	6
— English Conversations. (Methodische Anleitung z. Englisch-Sprechen.)		
4. Ed. cloth.	2	6
Otto, Dr. E., Kleine englische Sprachlehre. 2.Ed. sewed.	2	—
— Materialien z. Übersetzen i. Englische. 2.Ed. sewed.	2	—
Süpfle, Dr. L., Englische Chrestomathie. 7.Ed. cloth.	3	9

French:

Otto, Dr. E., Französische Konv.-Grammatik. 23. Ed. cloth.	5	7
— Französisches Konv.-Lesebuch. I. Abt. 8. Ed. cloth.	2	8
— Französisches Konv.-Lesebuch. II. Abt. 4. Ed. cloth.	2	8
— Französ. Konv.-Lesebuch f. Töchtereschul. I. Kurs. 3. Ed. cloth.	2	8
— Französ. Konv.-Lesebuch f. Töchtereschul. II. Kurs. 2. Ed. cloth.	2	8
— Kleine franz. Sprachlehre. 5. Ed. sewed.	2	—
— Conversations françaises. (Anleit. z. Franz.-Sprechen.) 5. Ed. cloth.	2	6
Riedel, J., Französisches Lese- u. Konv.-Büchlein. 5. Ed. sewed.	1	6
— Vorschule zur französischen Grammatik. 5. Ed. sewed.	2	—
— Maman, apprends-moi le français! 3. Ed. boards.	1	6
Süpfle, Dr. L., Französische Schulgrammatik. 5. Ed. cloth.	5	6
— Französisches Lesebuch. 9. Ed. cloth.	3	9
— Französische Chrestomathie. 4. Ed. cloth.	6	6

Dutch:

v. Reinhardstöttner, C., Holländ. Konv.-Grammatik. 3. Ed. cloth.	6	6
--	---	---

Italian:

Sauer, C. M., Italienische Konv.-Grammatik. 8. Ed. cloth.	5	6
— Schlüssel zur italienischen Konvers.-Grammatik. boards.	2	—
— Italienisches Konvers.-Lesebuch. 3. Ed. sewed.	3	6
— Kleine italien. Sprachlehre. 3. Ed. sewed.	2	—
— Dialoghi Italiani. Meth. Anleit. z. Italien.-Sprechen. 2. Ed. cloth.	2	6
Lardelli, J., Übungsstücke z. Übers. a. d. Deutschen ins Ital. 2. Ed. sewed.	1	6

Portuguese:

Otto-Kordgien, Portugiesische Sprachlehre. 2. Ed. cloth.	2	6
Sauer-Kordgien, Portug. Konv.-Grammatik. cloth.	6	6
— Schlüssel zur portug. Konv.-Grammatik. boards.	2	—

Method Gaspey-Otto-Sauer

for the Study of modern Languages.

For the use of Germans.

Russian:

Fuchs, Prof. P., Russische Konv.-Grammatik. cloth.	6	6
— Schlüssel zur russischen Konv.-Grammatik. boards.	2	—

Spanish:

Sauer, C. M., Spanische Konv.-Grammatik. 4. Ed. cloth.	6	6
— Schlüssel zur spanischen Konv.-Grammatik. boards.	2	—
— Diálogos castellanos. Span. Gespräche. 2. Ed. cloth.	2	6
Sauer-Kordgien, Spanische Rectionsliste. boards.	2	—
Sauer-Röhrich, Spanisches Lesebuch. cloth.	5	—
Sauer-Runge, Kleine spanische Sprachlehre. cloth.	2	6

Oberholzer u. Osmond, Kurze Anleit. zu deutschen, französ., engl. und italien. Geschäftsbriefen für Kaufleute und Gewerbetreibende. sewed. .	1	—
---	---	---

For the use of Italians.

German:

Sauer-Ferrari, Grammatica tedesca. 3. ed. cloth.	5	—
Otto, Dr. E., Grammatica tedesca elementare. 2. ed. boards.	2	6
— Letture tedesche. 2. ed. boards.	2	6

English:

Pavia, Luigi, Grammatica elementare della lingua inglese. cloth. . .	2	6
Sauer, C. M., Grammatica inglese. 2. ed. cloth.	5	—

French:

Sauer-Motti, Grammatica francese. cloth.	5	6
— Grammaticheffa francese. cloth.	2	6

For the use of Spaniards.

German:

Otto, Dr. E., Gramática sucinta de la lengua alemana. 2. Ed. boards.	2	6
--	---	---

English:

Otto, Dr. E., Gramática sucinta de la lengua inglesa. boards. . . .	2	6
---	---	---

French:

Otto, Dr. E., Gramática sucinta de la lengua francesa. boards. . .	2	6
--	---	---

For the use of Portuguese and Brazilians.

German:

Otto-Prévôt, Grammatica allemã. cloth.	6	—
— Chave da Grammatica allemã. boards.	2	—
— Grammatica elementar allemã. cloth.	2	6

